

## BREEAM In-Use International

### Technical Manual

SD221 – 2.0:2015

February 2016





## Terms and conditions

### Disclaimer

This Scheme Document is the property of BRE Global Limited and is made publicly available for information purposes only. Any testing, assessment, certification or approval activity related to this Scheme Document must be conducted in accordance with BRE Global Limited's approved processes, and such activity may only be undertaken by authorised employees, agents, and associates of the Building Research Establishment Limited and BRE Global Limited, or approved parties ("Approved Party(ies)"). Any party wishing to use or reproduce this Scheme Document to offer testing, assessment, certification or approval must apply to BRE Global Limited for training, assessment and an associated licence, in order to qualify as an Approved Party; a fee will normally be charged. BRE Global Limited will not unreasonably refuse such applications. BRE Global Limited accepts no responsibility for any unauthorised use or distribution by others of this Scheme Document and may take legal action to prevent such unauthorised use or distribution.

### Copyright

The information and images contained in this document are the property of BRE Global Limited unless explicitly stated to the contrary, and are protected by copyright laws. The information and images contained in this document may be downloaded and printed without requiring specific permission but remains the intellectual property, technical know-how and copyrighted material of BRE Global Limited. Such material is not to be used in a derogatory manner, in a misleading context or for commercial purposes. Where such material is being issued to others, the source including the web address and copyright status must be acknowledged. We may require you to register your details before downloading certain information or documents.

### Trade Marks

BRE, BRE Global, BREEAM, Smartwaste and the Green Guide are all trademarks owned by either BRE or BRE Global Limited and may not be used without written permission from BRE or BRE Global Limited.

Uncontrolled copy if printed. Valid on day of printing only.

### Cover image

SCI Chinon's Innovia, a 16,536 m<sup>2</sup> office building located in Paris, France.

© BRE Global Ltd 2015

## About BRE Global Limited

BRE Global Limited (part of the BRE (Building Research Establishment) Group) is an independent third party approvals body offering certification of fire, security and sustainability products and services to an international market.

BRE Global Limited's mission is to 'Protect People, Property and the Planet'.

We aim to achieve this by:

1. Researching and writing standards
2. Testing and certification in the areas of fire, electronics, security and sustainability
3. Developing world leading sustainability assessment methods
4. Undertaking research and consultancy for clients and regulators
5. Promulgating standards and knowledge throughout the industry through publications and events
6. Developing and delivering training

BRE Global Limited's product testing and approvals are carried out by recognised experts in our world renowned testing laboratories.

BRE Global Limited is custodian of a number of world leading brands including:

1. Building Research Establishment's Environmental Assessment Method (BREEAM) - the world's leading environmental assessment method for buildings.
2. Loss Prevention Certification Board (LPCB) for approval of fire and security products and services.

BRE Global Limited is a trading subsidiary of the BRE Trust, the registered research and education charity which owns the BRE Group.

BRE Global Limited  
Bucknalls Lane  
Watford  
Hertfordshire  
WD25 9XX

T +44 (0)333 321 8811  
F +44 (0)1923 664 910  
E [enquiries@breglobal.com](mailto:enquiries@breglobal.com)

[www.breglobal.com](http://www.breglobal.com)

[www.greenbooklive.com](http://www.greenbooklive.com)

## Table of contents

Terms and conditions.....	3
About BRE Global Limited .....	4
Table of contents.....	5
List of tables .....	13
List of figures.....	14
About this Scheme Document.....	15
Introduction to BREEAM .....	16
BREEAM In-Use International.....	19
Scope of BREEAM In-Use International .....	23
Scoring and rating of BREEAM In-Use International assessed assets .....	27
Evidence requirements for BREEAM In-Use International .....	32
Assessment criteria.....	39
<b>Building Details .....</b>	<b>41</b>
Asset .....	42
Basic Building Details.....	43
<b>Part 1: Asset Performance .....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Management .....</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>Health and Wellbeing.....</b>	<b>49</b>
Asset Performance HEA 01 – Glazing.....	50
Asset Performance HEA 02 – Glare control .....	51
Asset Performance HEA 03 – Thermal control.....	53
Asset Performance HEA 04 – Ventilation controls .....	55
Asset Performance HEA 05 – Microbial contamination .....	56
Asset Performance HEA 06 – Water provisions .....	58
Asset Performance HEA 07 – Indoor and/or outdoor space.....	60
Asset Performance HEA 08 – Illuminance levels (Lux) .....	62
Asset Performance HEA 09 – Lighting control.....	64
Asset Performance HEA 10 – Inclusive design .....	66
Asset Performance HEA 11 – Ventilation requirements .....	68
<b>Energy .....</b>	<b>70</b>
Asset Energy Calculator Guidance .....	72
Asset Performance ENE 01 – Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC).....	77
Asset Performance ENE 02 – Ventilation strategy .....	79
Asset Performance ENE 03 – Heat loss .....	81
Asset Performance ENE 04 – Pressure/air leakage test.....	82

Asset Performance ENE 05 – Heating.....	84
Asset Performance ENE 06 – Boiler efficiency.....	86
Asset Performance ENE 07 – Heat pump efficiency .....	87
Asset Performance ENE 08 – Fuel usage for heat generation.....	88
Asset Performance ENE 09 – Heat distribution.....	89
Asset Performance ENE 10 – Heat emitter type.....	91
Asset Performance ENE 11 – Mechanical and electrical heating equipment.....	93
Asset Performance ENE 12 – Cooling system .....	95
Asset Performance ENE 13 – Efficiency of cooling generator.....	97
Asset Performance ENE 14 – Cooling distribution .....	98
Asset Performance ENE 15 – Air distributed cooling system .....	100
Asset Performance ENE 16 – Refrigerant cooling system .....	101
Asset Performance ENE 17 – Cooling emitter type.....	102
Asset Performance ENE 18 – Glazing.....	104
Asset Performance ENE 19 – Mechanical and electrical cooling equipment.....	105
Asset Performance ENE 20 – Specific fan power .....	107
Asset Performance ENE 21 – Leakage tests.....	108
Asset Performance ENE 22 – Mechanical and electrical ventilation equipment .....	110
Asset Performance ENE 23 – Water heating.....	112
Asset Performance ENE 24 – Water heating energy sources.....	113
Asset Performance ENE 25 – High frequency ballast .....	114
Asset Performance ENE 26 – Internal lighting types.....	115
Asset Performance ENE 27 – Automatic lighting controls.....	117
Asset Performance ENE 28 – Occupancy sensors .....	118
Asset Performance ENE 29 – Legislation.....	119
Asset Performance ENE 30 – Onsite renewables .....	120
<b>Transport.....</b>	<b>122</b>
Asset Performance TRA 01 – Cyclist facilities.....	123
Asset Performance TRA 02 – Proximity to public transport.....	126
Asset Performance TRA 03 – Proximity to amenities .....	128
Asset Performance TRA 04 – Pedestrian and cyclist safety .....	130
<b>Water .....</b>	<b>131</b>
Asset Performance WAT 01 – Water meter.....	132
Asset Performance WAT 02 – Water efficient equipment: WCs.....	134
Asset Performance WAT 03 – Water efficient equipment: urinals.....	136
Asset Performance WAT 04 – Water efficient equipment: hand washing basins.....	138

Asset Performance WAT 05 – Water efficient equipment: showers .....	140
Asset Performance WAT 06 – Water efficient equipment: white goods .....	142
Asset Performance WAT 07 – Leak detection system .....	144
Asset Performance WAT 08 – Leak prevention.....	145
Asset Performance WAT 09 – Isolation valves.....	146
Asset Performance WAT 10 – Reducing mains water consumption .....	148
<b>Materials.....</b>	<b>149</b>
Asset Performance MAT 01 – Condition survey.....	150
Asset Performance MAT 02 – Security advice .....	152
Asset Performance MAT 03 – Intruder alarm system.....	154
Asset Performance MAT 04 – Alarm system monitoring.....	156
Asset Performance MAT 05 – Natural hazards .....	157
Asset Performance MAT 06 – Future adaptation.....	159
Asset Performance MAT 07 – Designing for robustness.....	160
<b>Waste.....</b>	<b>161</b>
Asset Performance WST 01 – Storage of operational waste .....	162
<b>Land Use and Ecology.....</b>	<b>164</b>
Asset Performance LE 01 – Planted area.....	165
Asset Performance LE 02 – Ecological features of planted area .....	167
<b>Pollution.....</b>	<b>169</b>
Asset Performance POL 01 – Pollution prevention .....	170
Asset Performance POL 02 – Flood risk assessment .....	172
Asset Performance POL 03 – Impact mitigation.....	174
Asset Performance POL 04 – Impacts of refrigerants .....	175
Asset Performance POL 05 – Leak detection systems .....	178
Asset Performance POL 06 – NO <sub>x</sub> emissions.....	180
<b>Part 2: Building Management .....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>Management .....</b>	<b>182</b>
Building Management MAN 01 – Building user guide .....	183
Building Management MAN 02 – Building user education.....	185
Building Management MAN 03 – Building user information .....	186
Building Management MAN 04 – Operation and maintenance manuals.....	187
Building Management MAN 05 – Maintenance procedures .....	189
Building Management MAN 06 – Maintenance policy .....	191
Building Management MAN 07 – Environmental policies and responsibilities .....	193
Building Management MAN 08 – Environmental policies.....	195

Building Management MAN 09 – Operating procedures .....	197
Building Management MAN 10 – Leak testing .....	199
Building Management MAN 11 – Green lease.....	200
Building Management MAN 12 – Building controls review .....	202
Building Management MAN 13 – Building adaptation .....	204
<b>Health and Wellbeing.....</b>	<b>205</b>
Building Management HEA 12 – Fresh air rates.....	206
Building Management HEA 13 – Operating temperature .....	208
Building Management HEA 14 – Internal environment: CO <sub>2</sub> monitoring.....	209
Building Management HEA 15 – Internal environment: CO monitoring .....	211
Building Management HEA 16 – Internal environment: NO <sub>x</sub> monitoring .....	213
Building Management HEA 17 – Internal environment: refurbishment/renovation/redecoration....	215
Building Management HEA 18 – Volatile organic compounds .....	216
Building Management HEA 19 – Control of chemicals .....	218
Building Management HEA 20 – Acoustic conditions .....	219
Building Management HEA 21 – Deep cleaning.....	221
Building Management HEA 22 – Legionella management .....	222
Building Management HEA 23 – Occupant satisfaction .....	224
Building Management HEA 24 – Occupant satisfaction: feedback.....	226
<b>Energy .....</b>	<b>228</b>
Operational Energy Calculator Guidance .....	230
Building Management ENE 31 – Energy consumption start date.....	232
Building Management ENE 32 – Energy consumption end date.....	233
Building Management ENE 33 – Electricity consumption.....	234
Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption.....	235
Building Management ENE 35 – LPG consumption .....	236
Building Management ENE 36 – Gas oil consumption .....	237
Building Management ENE 37 – Solid fossil fuel consumption .....	238
Building Management ENE 38 – Biodiesel consumption.....	239
Building Management ENE 39 – Biogas consumption .....	240
Building Management ENE 40 – Wood/Waste wood consumption .....	241
Building Management ENE 41 – District heating consumption .....	242
Building Management ENE 42 – Carbon intensity district heating .....	244
Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption.....	245
Building Management ENE 44 – Carbon intensity district cooling.....	246
Building Management ENE 45 – Electricity exported .....	247

Building Management ENE 46 – Non-standard energy uses .....	248
Building Management ENE 47, 50, 53, 56 & 59 – Non-standard energy use .....	249
Building Management ENE 48, 51, 54, 57 & 60 – Non-standard energy consumption.....	251
Building Management ENE 49, 52, 55, 58 & 61 – Non-standard energy consumption floor area .	252
Building Management ENE 62 – Energy consumption monitoring .....	253
Building Management ENE 63 – Energy consumption data use .....	254
Building Management ENE 64 – Sub-metering: main energy sources .....	256
Building Management ENE 65 – Sub-metering: other energy sources .....	258
Building Management ENE 66 – Sub-metering: tenanted areas .....	260
<b>Transport.....</b>	<b>261</b>
<b>Water .....</b>	<b>262</b>
Building Management WAT 11 – Annual consumption .....	263
Building Management WAT 12 – Water consumption: monitoring and reporting .....	264
Building Management WAT 13 – Drinking water .....	266
Building Management WAT 14 – Refurbishment.....	267
Building Management WAT 15 – Water strategy.....	268
Building Management WAT 16 – Water recycling .....	269
Building Management WAT 17 – Aspects and impacts.....	271
<b>Materials.....</b>	<b>272</b>
Building Management MAT 08 – Condition survey.....	273
Building Management MAT 09 – Sustainable procurement policy .....	275
Building Management MAT 10 – Sustainable procurement .....	277
Building Management MAT 11 – Risk management .....	278
Building Management MAT 12 – Risk management .....	279
Building Management MAT 13 – Emergency plan .....	280
Building Management MAT 14 – Hazard management.....	282
<b>Waste.....</b>	<b>284</b>
<b>Land Use and Ecology.....</b>	<b>285</b>
Building Management LE 03 – Ecology report.....	286
Building Management LE 04 – Biodiversity action plan.....	288
Building Management LE 05 – External landscaping/maintenance.....	290
<b>Pollution .....</b>	<b>292</b>
Building Management POL 07 – Night time light pollution.....	293
Building Management POL 08 – Chemical storage .....	295
Building Management POL 09 – Bunding.....	296
Building Management POL 10 – Light-liquid separators .....	297

Building Management POL 11 – Refrigerants .....	298
Building Management POL 12 – Land contamination mitigation .....	300
Building Management POL 13 – Emergency preparedness and response.....	302
Building Management POL 14 – Complaints procedure.....	303
<b>Part 3: Occupier Management .....</b>	<b>304</b>
<b>Management .....</b>	<b>305</b>
Occupier Management MAN 14 – Environmental management policy .....	306
Occupier Management MAN 15 – Environmental management issues .....	308
Occupier Management MAN 16 – Environmental management implementation.....	310
Occupier Management MAN 17 – Environmental objectives .....	312
Occupier Management MAN 18 – Organisational performance review .....	314
Occupier Management MAN 19 – Sustainability report.....	316
Occupier Management MAN 20 – Green lease .....	318
<b>Health and Wellbeing.....</b>	<b>319</b>
Occupier Management HEA 25 – Occupier satisfaction.....	320
Occupier Management HEA 26 – Health and wellbeing management targets .....	322
Occupier Management HEA 27 – Health and wellbeing management objectives .....	325
Occupier Management HEA 28 – View out .....	326
Occupier Management HEA 29 – Communal rest areas.....	328
<b>Energy .....</b>	<b>329</b>
Occupier Management ENE 67 – Energy policy.....	330
Occupier Management ENE 68 – Energy management arrangements .....	331
Occupier Management ENE 69 – Trends in energy performance data.....	333
Occupier Management ENE 70 – Energy objectives.....	334
Occupier Management ENE 71 – Energy savings .....	335
<b>Transport.....</b>	<b>336</b>
Occupier Management TRA 05 – Transport requirements.....	337
Occupier Management TRA 06 – Transport management arrangements .....	339
Occupier Management TRA 07 – Local public transport.....	342
Occupier Management TRA 08 – Local amenities .....	343
Occupier Management TRA 09 – Transport objectives.....	344
Occupier Management TRA 10 – Transport impact of commuting.....	345
Occupier Management TRA 11 – Transport impact of business travel .....	346
Occupier Management TRA 12 – Transport impact of goods delivery.....	348
<b>Water .....</b>	<b>349</b>
Occupier Management WAT 18 – Water management.....	350

Occupier Management WAT 19 – Water management arrangements .....	351
Occupier Management WAT 20 – Water management targets .....	353
Occupier Management WAT 21 – Water consumption .....	354
<b>Materials.....</b>	<b>355</b>
Occupier Management MAT 15 – Material procurement issues.....	356
Occupier Management MAT 16 – Material procurement issues.....	359
Occupier Management MAT 17 – Supplier approval.....	361
Occupier Management MAT 18 – Supplier quality policy .....	362
Occupier Management MAT 19 – Supplier environmental management.....	364
Occupier Management MAT 20 – Supplier quality management (third party certified).....	366
Occupier Management MAT 21 – Supplier management.....	368
Occupier Management MAT 22 – Supplier responsible sourcing standard (third party certified) ..	369
Occupier Management MAT 23 – Material procurement targets .....	371
<b>Waste.....</b>	<b>372</b>
Occupier Management WST 02 – Waste management .....	373
Occupier Management WST 03 – Waste management .....	375
Occupier Management WST 04 – Waste management arrangements.....	377
Occupier Management WST 05 – Waste monitoring .....	379
Occupier Management WST 06 – Waste performance .....	380
Occupier Management WST 07 – Waste management objectives .....	381
Occupier Management WST 08 – Waste sent to landfill .....	382
Occupier Management WST 09 – Waste diverted from landfill.....	383
Occupier Management WST 10 – Waste sent for incineration.....	384
<b>Land Use and Ecology.....</b>	<b>385</b>
Occupier Management LE 06 – Ecology/biodiversity enhancement .....	386
<b>Pollution .....</b>	<b>388</b>
Occupier Management POL 15 – Pollution management .....	389
Occupier Management POL 16 – Pollution prevention arrangements .....	391
Occupier Management POL 17 – Pollution prevention targets.....	394
<b>Annex A: Offices .....</b>	<b>395</b>
Introduction.....	396
HEA 26A – Health and Wellbeing .....	397
ENE 68A – Energy .....	398
TRA 06A – Transport.....	400
WAT 19A – Water .....	402
MAT 16A – Materials.....	403

WST 04A – Waste.....404  
POL 16A – Pollution.....406

## List of tables

Table 1: BREEAM In-Use International sustainability categories .....	19
Table 2: Asset types that can be assessed using BREEAM In-Use International .....	23
Table 3: Client type that each BREEAM In-Use part is aimed at .....	24
Table 4: BREEAM In-Use International rating benchmarks .....	27
Table 5: BREEAM In-Use International Part 3 minimum standards .....	28
Table 6: BREEAM In-Use International environmental section weightings .....	30
Table 7: Example BREEAM In-Use International Part 2 calculation .....	31
Table 8: BREEAM Evidence principles .....	34
Table 9: Evidence types .....	36
Table 10: Energy end use components and subcomponents .....	72
Table 11: End use component weighting factors .....	75
Table 12: Water consumption baseline levels for white goods .....	142
Table 13: Common refrigerant types with a low GWP .....	176
Table 14: Examples of refrigerants with a low GWP potential .....	299

## List of figures

Figure 1: BREEAM schemes by built environment lifecycle stages .....	20
Figure 2: Asset energy calculation flowchart .....	76

## About this Scheme Document

This document is the BREEAM In-Use International Technical Manual. It describes an environmental performance standard against which existing, non-domestic assets can be assessed and achieve a BREEAM In-Use International rating.

The Scheme Document and the information detailed within is intended for use by trained, qualified and licensed BREEAM In-Use Assessors in accordance with the procedural and operational requirements of BREEAM (as described in the BREEAM Operations Manual, SD096) the terms and conditions of a BREEAM In-Use licence. This document should be used by non-BREEAM In-Use Assessors and clients for reference purposes only.

## Introduction to BREEAM

BREEAM (Building Research Establishment's Environmental Assessment Method) is the world's first sustainability rating scheme for the built environment and has contributed much to the strong focus in the UK on sustainability in building design, construction and use. BREEAM is now an international standard that is locally adapted, operated and applied through a network of international operators, assessors and industry professionals. Through its application and use BREEAM helps clients measure and reduce the environmental impacts of their buildings and in doing so create higher value, lower risk assets.

To date, BREEAM has been used to certify over 260,000 building assessments across the building life cycle and it is being applied in over 50 countries.

### Aims of BREEAM

- To mitigate the life cycle impacts of buildings on the environment.
- To enable buildings to be recognised according to their environmental benefits.
- To provide a credible, environmental label for buildings.
- To stimulate demand and create value for sustainable buildings, building products and supply chains.

### Objectives of BREEAM

- To provide market recognition of buildings with a low environmental impact.
- To ensure best environmental practice is incorporated in the planning, design, construction and operation of buildings and the wider built environment.
- To define a robust, cost effective performance standard surpassing that required by regulations.
- To challenge the market to provide innovative, cost effective solutions that minimise the environmental impact of buildings.
- To raise awareness amongst owners, occupants, designers and operators of the benefits and value of buildings with a reduced life cycle impact on the environment.
- To allow organisations to demonstrate progress towards corporate environmental objectives.

BREEAM is developed and operated to meet the following underlying principles:

- Ensure **environmental quality** through an accessible, holistic and balanced measure of environmental impacts.
- Use **quantified measures** for determining environmental quality.
- Adopt a **flexible approach** that encourages and rewards positive outcomes, avoiding prescribed solutions.
- Use **robust science** and **best practice** as the basis for quantifying and calibrating a cost effective and rigorous performance standard for defining environmental quality.
- Reflect the **social and economic benefits** of meeting the environmental objectives covered.
- Provide a **common international framework** of assessment that is tailored to meet the 'local' context including regulation, climate and sector.
- **Integrate building professionals** in the development and operational processes to ensure wide understanding and accessibility.

- Adopt **third party certification** to ensure independence, credibility and consistency of the label.
- Adopt **existing industry tools**, practices and other standards wherever possible to support developments in policy and technology, build on existing skills and understanding and minimise costs.
- Align technically and operationally with **relevant international standards**, including the suite of standards on the 'Sustainability of Construction Works' prepared by the European Committee for Standardisation Technical Committee CEN/TC 350.
- Engage with a representative range of **stakeholders** to inform on-going development in accordance with the underlying principles and the pace of change in performance standards (accounting for policy, regulation and market capability).

The aims, objectives and principles of BREEAM are embodied within a Core Technical Standard owned and managed by BRE Global Limited. This is applied through a suite of BREEAM Schemes covering aspects of the built environment life cycle. These schemes are locally developed and operated by a number of different organisations, called National Scheme Operators (NSOs), across a range of countries.

For a full list of BREEAM National Scheme Operators and Schemes visit [www.breeam.com](http://www.breeam.com).

## The BRE Global BREEAM Schemes

BRE Global Limited is the National Scheme Operator of BREEAM in the UK. We develop and operate a number of BREEAM schemes, each designed to assess the environmental performance of buildings at various stages in the life cycle, and these include:

- **BREEAM Communities** for the master-planning of a larger community of buildings
- **BREEAM New Construction** for new build, domestic and non-domestic buildings
- **BREEAM In-Use** for existing non-domestic buildings in-use
- **BREEAM Refurbishment** for domestic and non-domestic building fit-outs and refurbishments

Independent BREEAM Assessors, trained, qualified and licensed by BRE Global Limited can undertake a BREEAM assessment using this Scheme Document and associated reporting and calculation tools.

Once an assessment is complete and quality assured BRE Global Limited will issue a BREEAM certificate. The BREEAM certificate provides formal verification that the Assessor has completed an assessment of a building in accordance with the requirements of the scheme and its quality standards and procedures.

A BREEAM certificate provides assurance to any interested party that a building's BREEAM rating, at the time of certification, accurately reflects its performance against the BREEAM standard.

Anyone wishing to verify the BREEAM rating of a building can do so by either checking its BREEAM certificate, which will contain the certification mark, (see below) or by searching the BREEAM buildings listings on [www.greenbooklive.com](http://www.greenbooklive.com).



Figure 1: BREEAM Certification mark

## Ensuring quality and consistency

All BREEAM Schemes are developed and operated by National Scheme Operators in accordance with the Code for a Sustainable Built Environment. The Code for a Sustainable Built Environment is a set of strategic principles and requirements which define an integrated approach to the design, management, evaluation and certification of the environmental, social and economic impacts of the built environment.

The Code is interpreted through the BREEAM Core Process and Technical Standards. These linked documents set out the requirements that a compliant scheme must meet in order to be affiliated with the Code. The Standards ensure that a common scientific and performance basis is used by all compliant schemes operated by National Scheme Operators, while ensuring that these are relevant to local demands, standards and practices.

The Code and associated standards are developed and maintained by BRE Global Limited with direction from the BREEAM Strategy Board, under the auspices of the BRE Global Governing Board.

To ensure competence, impartiality and performance capability, all National Scheme Operators are required to maintain scheme operations to internationally agreed standards and seek accreditation from a national accreditation body.

BRE Global Limited is a United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS) accredited certification body (No. 0007). The scope of our accreditation to ISO/IEC 17065 'Conformity assessment - Requirements for bodies certifying products, processes and services' can be verified on the UKAS website, and includes BREEAM Scheme SD123 'Environmental assessments of the built environment – certification of the process'.

BRE Global Ltd is also certified to ISO 9001 'Quality management systems – Requirements' for all its BREEAM related activities.

As an accredited certification body, BRE Global Limited maintains an open and accountable governance structure. The operation of BREEAM is overseen by an independent Governing Body and a Standing Panel for Peer & Market Review. The Governing Body represents stakeholder interests to ensure, amongst other things, that we at BRE Global Limited are acting independently and impartially, operating our processes correctly, and treating our customers fairly.

The Standing Panel provides BRE Global Limited with access to a range of experts that can review BRE Global Limited's standards and schemes to ensure their robustness from a scientific, technical and market perspective as well as ensuring the development of the standards and schemes is open to greater external and independent scrutiny.

## BREEAM In-Use International

The BREEAM In-Use International scheme (referred to as BREEAM In-Use from this point onwards) is a performance based assessment method and certification scheme for existing non-domestic buildings.

The primary aim of BREEAM In-Use is to mitigate the operational impacts of existing assets on the environment in a robust and cost effective manner. The scheme provides a holistic approach which enables assets to be assessed and benchmarked across a large range of environmental issues (management, health and wellbeing, energy, transport, water, materials, waste, land use and ecology, and pollution).

The BREEAM In-Use assessment process is broken down into three Parts:

- Part 1 – Asset Performance: the performance of the asset's built form, construction, fixtures, fittings and installed services
- Part 2 – Building Management: the management of the asset
- Part 3 – Occupier Management: the management of building users and services

A Part 1 or Part 2 assessment can be conducted in isolation. A Part 3 assessment is recommended to be undertaken in combination with a Part 2 assessment as the score achieved for Part 2 feeds into the score for Part 3. Clients are, however encouraged to assess against all 3 Parts to assess the overall environmental impact of their asset.

The final outcome of a BREEAM In-Use assessment is a certified BREEAM In-Use rating for the Part against which an assessment is undertaken. This certified BREEAM In-Use rating reflects the asset's performance across the environmental categories listed in Table 1. It enables the performance of the asset to be benchmarked but most importantly, the knowledge obtained from such a comprehensive assessment allows the asset's performance to be optimised through informed management decisions. By enabling on-going assessments, BREEAM In-Use encourages continual improvement.

Table 1: BREEAM In-Use International sustainability categories

Environmental Category	Purpose
Management	To encourage the adoption of sustainable management practices related to operational activities to ensure that robust sustainability objectives are set, monitored and regularly updated.
Health & Wellbeing	To manage, monitor and increase the comfort and health and safety of asset occupants, visitors and other users within the asset.
Energy	To manage and monitor energy consumption and to encourage the use of equipment that supports the sustainable use and management of energy in the asset.
Transport	To recognise the implementation of policies that record the impacts related to transport, the proximity of local amenities and improve the ability of stakeholders to utilise alternative means of transportation.
Water	To manage and monitor water consumption in the operation of the asset and its site to encourage sustainable water consumption.

Environmental Category	Purpose
Materials	To manage and monitor the environmental impact of procurement as well as recognising the risks to the asset and its occupiers associated with security, fire and other naturally occurring events.
Waste	To encourage and recognise the implementation of policies and systems that reduce waste production and improve levels of segregation and recycling.
Land Use & Ecology	To manage and monitor the impact that activities undertaken on the asset's site have on the local environment and encourage sustainable land use, habitat protection and creation.
Pollution	To prevent, manage, monitor and control pollution associated with the assets location and operation.

## Relationship to other BREEAM schemes

BREEAM In-Use assesses the In-Use phase of a building's lifecycle as outlined in Figure 1. The construction of new buildings, new infrastructure or communities projects, and existing building refurbishment and fit-outs cannot be assessed under the BREEAM In-Use scheme. Project requiring assessment during these life cycle stages should be assessed under the relevant BREEAM schemes indicated in Figure 1.

BREEAM In-Use has been developed with 3 distinct parts, each addressing a different aspect of an existing building's performance. Once a building has been constructed, the asset performance can be assessed with Part 1 of BREEAM In-Use. Undertaking this assessment will provide the client with an overview of the actual performance of the asset's fixtures, services and built form and can be used to inform refurbishment and/or tuning and re-commissioning processes.

As the In-Use phase of buildings lasts for multiple years, BREEAM In-Use has been developed to assess the on-going performance of existing buildings and identify opportunities for improvements in a continuous cycle. A BREEAM In-Use assessment can therefore be used to inform where and when refurbishments should be carried out and how these perform against the targets once completed. The BREEAM Refurbishment and Fit-out scheme can then be used to assess and certify the delivery of a sustainable refurbishment and fit-out, in order to mitigate the life cycle impacts of existing buildings on the environment in a robust and cost effective manner.



Figure 1: BREEAM schemes by built environment lifecycle stages

## How to use the BREEAM In-Use International scheme

This BREEAM In-Use International scheme document is a technical document which has been created to:

1. Enable qualified and licensed BREEAM In-Use Assessors to complete BREEAM In-Use International assessments and determine a rating.
2. Enable BRE Global Ltd to complete quality assurance reviews of a BREEAM In-Use licenced Assessor's assessment report, in accordance with the standards to which BRE Global Ltd is accredited.
3. As a reference for clients whose proposed asset/management practices are assessed against BREEAM In-Use International.

The scheme document is split into five sections:

1. Introduction
2. Scope of the BREEAM In-Use International scheme
3. Scoring and rating BREEAM In-Use International assessed assets, including minimum standards for part 3
4. The BREEAM In-Use International evidence requirements
5. Assessment criteria:
  - a) Building Details.
  - b) Part 1: Asset Performance
  - c) Part 2: Building Management
  - d) Part 3: Occupier Management

The **Scope** section describes the types of assets and stages of assessment that this version of the BREEAM In-Use International Scheme can be applied to. The Scope section can be used by clients and BREEAM In-Use Assessors to check whether this is the correct BREEAM Scheme to use for their project.

The **Scoring and rating** section illustrates how an asset's assessed performance is measured and rated. It outlines the BREEAM In-Use rating level benchmarks, the minimum standards for Part 3, and the BREEAM In-Use environmental section weightings. Furthermore, this section includes a description of the BREEAM In-Use assessment issues and 'credits' and how performance against these is calculated and expressed as a BREEAM In-Use rating.

**Please note:** for the purpose of formal assessment and certification, the asset's actual BREEAM performance must be verified by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor.

The **Evidence for BREEAM In-Use International** section provides guidance to BREEAM In-Use Assessors on the various types and forms of evidence to demonstrate compliance with BREEAM In-Use issues. This section also includes a description of why BREEAM requires an auditable trail of evidence and a table of general types of evidence that are typically required and used as a form of compliance.

The **Building Details** section includes an explanation of building and asset related data that must be completed prior to undertaking a BREEAM In-Use assessment. The data that is filled out within this section will assist in determining energy benchmarks and scores and will be used when a certificate is requested.

The **Assessment criteria** section includes the BREEAM In-Use assessment issues, categorised in 9 environmental sections divided over the 3 Parts. Within each issue the levels of performance (the

available credits) against which the asset will be assessed are outlined. By using the appropriate evidence a corresponding number of available BREEAM In-Use credits can be awarded.

Several issues in Part 3 of the BREEAM In-Use International assessment process have minimum standards. This means that in order to achieve a particular BREEAM In-Use rating, specific credits or criteria must be achieved (BREEAM In-Use minimum standards are outlined in the **Scoring and rating BREEAM In-Use International** assessed assets section).

## Scope of BREEAM In-Use International

The BREEAM In-Use International scheme can be used to assess the environmental performance of existing (in-use) non-domestic assets.

BREEAM In-Use International has been developed for use in the UK and in countries without a BREEAM affiliated National Scheme Operator (NSO). Please note: Where the country has a NSO offering a country-specific local scheme that is appropriate to the building type, their scheme must be used in preference to BREEAM In-Use International. Please refer to [www.breeam.com](http://www.breeam.com) for further details on countries with local schemes.

### Asset types that can be assessed

The asset types that can be assessed under the BREEAM In-Use International scheme are outlined in Table 2.

Table 2: Asset types that can be assessed using BREEAM In-Use International

Part 1: Asset Performance	Part 2: Building Management	Part 3: Occupier Management
All <b>non-domestic</b> asset types that meet eligibility criteria listed below	All <b>non-domestic</b> asset types that meet eligibility criteria listed below	Offices
		Retail – Pilot version*
		Healthcare – Pilot version*

\* Part 3 versions for Retail and Healthcare are currently in pilot versions. BRE has developed content that is specific to these asset types and invites users to test it.

### Eligibility criteria

For all asset types that can be assessed using BREEAM In-Use International, the eligibility criteria listed below must also be met:

#### For an assessment of any part:

- The asset must be a complete and finished structure.
- The asset must contain occupied space(s) i.e. a room/rooms or space within the asset that is likely to be continuously occupied for 30 minutes or more per day by a building user).  
For a Part 1 assessment that has not yet been occupied, the asset must contain space that is designated to be occupied.
- An asset does not have to include the whole building; it could include just part of a building or a single floor. In such cases, the scope of the BREEAM In-Use assessment must include all relevant amenity and service areas.
- An asset cannot normally include more than one building. The only exception is where several buildings meet the following criteria:
  - a) Connected to and share common services to meet the comfort and sanitary demands of the occupants (for example: heating, ventilation, cooling and hot water).
  - b) The buildings have the same building function, similar performance, are of the same design and age.
  - c) Building management and maintenance policies must be the same across the buildings.

- d) The buildings share the same building envelope specification (the physical separator between the interior and exterior of a building).

**Note:** where floor areas are shared by more than one organisation, it must be assessed as one asset for Part 1 and Part 2. For a Part 3 assessment, each occupying organisation would have to undertake an assessment.

- The asset must comply with all relevant environmental and health and safety legislation in its location.

### For an assessment of Part 2 and/or Part 3

- The asset must have been occupied for at least one year prior to the start of the assessment.
- Consumption data related to the asset of at least one year prior to the start of the assessment must be available. This includes (but is not limited to): energy, water, transport and waste data. For energy consumption, this must include both electrical and non-electrical data.

**Note:** Consumption data must always be available for all spaces that are included in the assessment. Please refer to the Part 2 Energy Section (issues ENE33 - ENE45 for further information).

## Multi-tenanted assessments

The client type each BREEAM In-Use Part is aimed at, and how these Parts can be assessed against within multi-tenanted assets is outlined in Table 3.

Table 3: Client type that each BREEAM In-Use part is aimed at

Part	Client type	Multi-tenanted assessment
1: Asset Performance	Building owner	<p>The rating can be based on:</p> <p>a) Common areas* that a facility/building manager is responsible for</p> <p>OR</p> <p>b) Common areas AND tenanted areas within the asset that are managed by the asset's facility/building manager</p> <p>Where option b is selected:</p> <p>The assessor needs to collate the required data from each space type and the final score would be determined by the space with the lowest score.</p> <p>The assessment must include evidence of a representative sample of the tenants to ensure that central management practices are in place and fully implemented in line with the assessment criteria.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The evidence provided for these samples must be representative of the asset and must include at least one sample of each type of space use within the asset. For example, where there are: shops, offices and food space uses within the asset, the sample must include evidence that central management practices are in place for a representative sample of each of these space uses</p>
2: Building Management	Facility / building management	

Part	Client type	Multi-tenanted assessment
3: Occupier Management	Occupier	Multi-tenanted buildings cannot be assessed as a single asset under Part 3, as management practices are likely to differ for each tenant. Therefore, a Part 3 assessment must be undertaken for each tenant.

\*Common areas are facilities and/or access that is not owned or controlled by any one individual tenant, but used by all. These common areas are typically managed and maintained by the development's owner, i.e. landlord or their managing agent. Examples of common areas include: an atrium, stairwells, main entrance foyers/reception and external landscaped areas.

Example situations for multi-tenanted assets can be seen in Figure 2 and Figure 3.

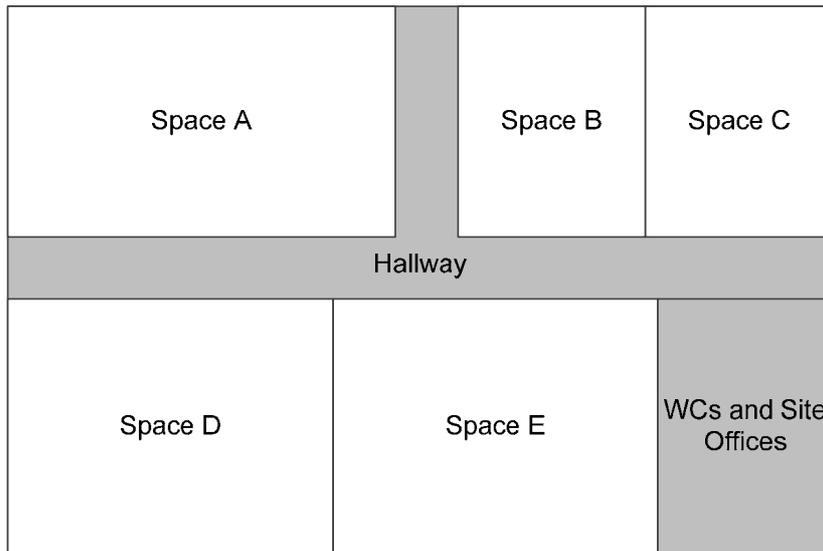


Figure 2: Multi-tenanted asset with common area assessed only (assessed area in grey).

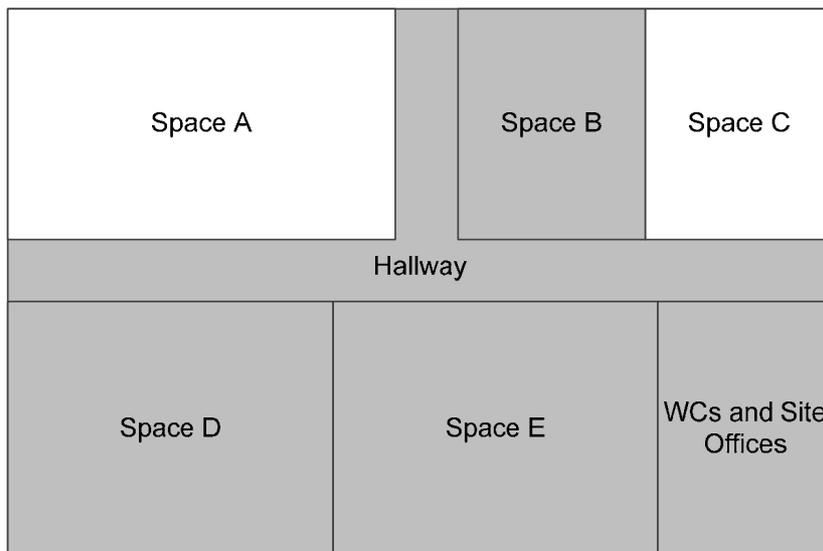


Figure 3: Multi-tenanted asset with common area and spaces B, D and E assessed (assessed are in grey).

## Data collection and use

Real estate owners, occupiers, developers and funders around the world are facing ever increasing demands to address the demands of Corporate Social Responsibility and hence the need for greater sustainability of existing buildings they own, manage and occupy.

By gathering, analysing and sharing data trends related to the environmental performance of these buildings, BREEAM In-Use will help clients to develop a common understanding of how their buildings perform, what measures can be taken to improve their performance and the cost benefit these measures give. Assessing an asset according to BREEAM In-Use means a client can:

- Set key performance indicators for energy, water, waste and greenhouse gas performance.
- Understand the performance of assets within their portfolios.
- Benchmark individual assets within portfolios against similar assets in the same country and in other territories.
- Optimise the performance of their buildings through good management, maintenance and occupation policies and procedures.
- Set performance improvement targets and measure progress over time.
- Support BRE on the continuing development of BREEAM In-Use by identifying and improving best environmental performance of existing buildings.

## Scoring and rating of BREEAM In-Use International assessed assets

There are a number of elements that determine the overall performance of an In-Use project assessed using BREEAM In-Use International. These are as follows:

1. The BREEAM In-Use International rating level benchmarks
2. For a Part 3 assessment: the BREEAM In-Use International minimum standards
3. The environmental section weightings
4. The BREEAM In-Use International assessment issues and credits

The way in which these elements combine to produce a BREEAM In-Use International rating is summarised below.

### BREEAM In-Use International rating benchmarks

The BREEAM rating benchmarks for projects assessed using BREEAM In-Use International are outlined in Table 4.

Table 4: BREEAM In-Use International rating benchmarks

BREEAM In-Use International Rating	% score	Star rating
OUTSTANDING	≥85	★★★★★★
EXCELLENT	≥70 to <85	★★★★★
VERY GOOD	≥55 to <70	★★★★
GOOD	≥40 to <55	★★★
PASS	≥25 to <40	★★
ACCEPTABLE	≥10 to <25	★
UNCLASSIFIED	<10	-

The BREEAM In-Use rating benchmarks enable a client and all other stakeholders to compare the performance of the asset with other existing assets, including those within a portfolio.

An unclassified BREEAM In-Use rating represents performance that is non-compliant with BREEAM In-Use, failing to meet either the BREEAM In-Use minimum standards for key environmental issues or the overall threshold score required for formal BREEAM In-Use certification.

### Minimum standards

To maintain a flexible system, BREEAM In-Use International adopts a 'balanced score-card' approach to the assessment and rating of asset performance. This means that, to achieve a particular level of performance the majority of BREEAM In-Use International credits can be traded, i.e. non-compliance in one area can be off-set through compliance in another to achieve the target BREEAM In-Use International rating.

However, to ensure that performance against fundamental environmental issues is not over-looked in pursuit of a particular rating, BREEAM In-Use International sets minimum standards of performance in

key areas e.g. energy, water, waste etc. for a Part 3 assessment only. It is important to bear in mind that these are minimum acceptable levels of performance and, in that respect they should not necessarily be viewed as levels that are representative of best practice for a BREEAM In-Use International rating level.

The minimum standards in Part 3 must be met in order to achieve a given BREEAM In-Use rating. These minimum standards are contained within the answer options for the Part 3 (Occupier Management) assessment option and are outlined in Table 5. Regardless of the number of credits achieved in the Part 3 questionnaire, all minimum standards answer options related to a specific BREEAM In-Use International rating must be met in order to achieve that rating. Where the minimum standards have not been met, the rating cannot be achieved even if enough credits have been gained to satisfy that rating band.

Table 5: BREEAM In-Use International Part 3 minimum standards

Minimum standards by BREEAM In-Use rating					
BREEAM issue	Pass	Good	Very Good	Excellent	Outstanding
MAN 14 – Environmental management policy	An environmental policy and/or procedure is under development		An environmental policy and/or procedure is in place and has been endorsed by the board of directors/senior management		
MAN 15 – Environmental management issues	None	Energy consumption, energy efficiency and supply including targets for reduction of energy consumption contained within an energy plan  Waste reduction and management	Energy consumption, energy efficiency and supply including targets for reduction of energy consumption contained within an energy plan  Waste reduction and management  Pollution reduction/control		
MAN 19 – Sustainability report	None	Yes. Internal report which is not independently verified	Yes. Report is independently verified by a third party assurance/verification body and is accessible to all internal and external stakeholders		
HEA 25 – Occupier satisfaction	None	Skills and capabilities of staff	Skills and capabilities of staff	Skills and capabilities of staff  Workplace comfort	

Minimum standards by BREEAM In-Use rating					
BREEAM issue	Pass	Good	Very Good	Excellent	Outstanding
			Workplace comfort	Continual professional development	
ENE 68 – Energy management arrangements	None	Energy consumption is actively recorded and monitored			
TRA 05 – Transport requirements	None			Staff commuting	
WAT 19 – Water management arrangements	Water consumption is recorded	Water consumption is recorded Water consumption is monitored			
MAT 15 – Material procurement issues	None				Responsible sourcing has been conducted in accordance with a procedure/guideline/standard that has international scope. Further information regarding responsible sourcing can be found on <a href="http://www.breem.com">www.breem.com</a>
POL 15 – Pollution management	None		Use of effective incident response guidance/procedures in accordance to local, national, or international guidance/procedures		
POL 16 – Pollution prevention arrangements	None		Pollution risks, levels and incidents are recorded	Pollution risks, levels and incidents are recorded Regular inspection and maintenance of machinery / equipment operational in the organisation's day-to-day	

Minimum standards by BREEAM In-Use rating					
BREEAM issue	Pass	Good	Very Good	Excellent	Outstanding
					activities to minimise the risk of pollution occurring

## Environmental section weightings

Environmental weightings are fundamental to any building environmental assessment method as they provide a means of defining, and therefore ranking, the relative impact of environmental issues. BREEAM uses an explicit weighting system derived from a combination of consensus based weightings and ranking by a panel of experts. The outputs from this exercise are then used to determine the relative value of the environmental sections used in BREEAM and their contribution to the overall BREEAM score.

This weighting system is defined in greater detail within the BRE Global Core Process Standard (BES 5301) and its supporting procedural documents. These form part of the over-arching BREEAM Standard and the Code for a Sustainable Built Environment. The same ranking of impacts used in BREEAM underpins the scoring mechanisms in the BRE Green Guide to Specification and the BRE Environmental Profiling Method for construction materials.

The weightings for each of the nine environmental sections included in the BREEAM In-Use International Scheme are outlined in Table 6.

Table 6: BREEAM In-Use International environmental section weightings

Environmental Section	Weighting		
	Part 1	Part 2	Part 3
Management	-	15%	12%
Health & Wellbeing	17%	15%	15%
Energy	26.5%	31.5%	19.5%
Transport	11.5%	-	18.5%
Water	8%	5.5%	3.5%
Materials	8.5%	7.5%	4.5%
Waste	5%	-	11.5%
Land Use & Ecology	9.5%	12.5%	5%
Pollution	14%	13%	10.5%
Total	100%	100%	100%

## Calculating an asset's BREEAM In-Use International rating

A BREEAM In-Use Assessor must determine the BREEAM In-Use International rating using the relevant reporting tool/software and in compliance with the requirements as set out in this technical manual. The process of determining a BREEAM In-Use International rating for Part 1, Part 2 and Part 3 is outlined below and an example calculation for a Part 2 assessment included in Table 7.

1. For each of BREEAM In-Use International's environmental sections the number of 'credits' awarded is determined by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor in accordance with the criteria of each assessment issue (as detailed in the technical sections of this document).
2. The percentage of 'credits' achieved is then calculated for each section.
3. The percentage of 'credits' achieved in each section is then multiplied by the corresponding section weighting. This gives the overall environmental section score.
4. The section scores are then added together to give the overall BREEAM In-Use International score for the Part against which the asset has been assessed.
5. The overall score is then compared to the BREEAM In-Use International rating benchmark levels in order to view the relevant BREEAM rating that has been achieved.
6. For a Part 3 rating the total credits for each section included in both Part 2 and Part 3 assessments are combined. These scores are then weighted using Part 3 weightings to give a final 3 score. In addition, for a Part 3 rating, all minimum standards applicable to the rating level must have been met before BREEAM In-Use International rating is achieved.

Table 7: Example BREEAM In-Use International Part 2 calculation

BREEAM Section	Credits Achieved	Credits Available	% of Credits Achieved	Section Weighting	Section Score
Management	39	46	85%	0.15	12.75%
Health and Wellbeing	20	37	54%	0.15	8.1%
Energy	40	60	67%	0.315	21.11%
Transport	-	-	-	-	-
Water	14	26	54%	0.055	2.97%
Materials	16	20	80%	0.075	6%
Waste	-	-	-	-	-
Land Use and Ecology	6	10	60%	0.125	7.5%
Pollution	14	24	58%	0.13	7.54%
<b>Final BREEAM score</b>					65.97%
<b>BREEAM Rating</b>					VERY GOOD

## Evidence requirements for BREEAM In-Use International

This section provides guidance to assessors and project teams on the types of evidence required to demonstrate compliance with the BREEAM In-Use assessment criteria.

### Why does BREEAM require evidence?

BREEAM is a third party assessment and certification scheme operated in accordance with international standards. Operating to international standards ensures that certification schemes such as BREEAM are run in a consistent and reliable manner. The BREEAM Assessor's assessment report and the BRE Global Quality Assurance process are fundamental to BREEAM, ensuring consistency of, and confidence in, the BREEAM rating awarded by the assessor.

To maintain this consistency and credibility all certification decisions must be based on verified and credible information that is traceable, relevant to and linked to the building being assessed i.e. evidence based. This is not only important for ensuring compliance with the international standards to which BREEAM operates, but also in terms of managing risk to clients and BREEAM Assessors in the event that a certification outcome is challenged.

### The BREEAM In-Use Assessor role

It is the BREEAM In-Use Assessor who determines the BREEAM In-Use International rating and the assessment report and collated evidence are the formal records of an assessor's audit against the criteria defined in the Technical Manual for BREEAM In-Use International. The BREEAM In-Use International certificate issued by BRE Global provides assurance that the service provided by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor (that is, the process of producing the assessment report) has been conducted in accordance with the requirements of the scheme. The purpose of the certificate is therefore to give confidence to the client in the assessor's performance and processes in determining a BREEAM In-Use International rating.

It is the role of the BREEAM In-Use Assessor to gather project information and use it to assess performance against the BREEAM In-Use International scheme in a competent and impartial manner. To award a BREEAM In-Use International credit, the assessor must be satisfied beyond reasonable doubt that the evidence gathered demonstrates unambiguous compliance with all relevant criteria defined in the BREEAM In-Use International scheme. All evidence must be appropriately referenced and made available on request from BRE Global Ltd for quality assurance checks.

Clear, ordered and well referenced evidence for each BREEAM In-Use International issue and criterion facilitates efficient quality assurance and certification. The naming of the files that are submitted as evidence should at least include:

- Registration number
- Part of BIU assessment
- Category of BIU assessment
- Question within BIU assessment
- If large documents are used as evidence, the assessor should highlight and reference the page or section of the document that demonstrates compliance.
- If photos are used as evidence, these must clearly show how compliance with a criterion is sought and, where needed, be annotated. In addition, photos must be date stamped.

For example:

- Naming of file: BIUS00002\_Part2\_Management\_MAN08
- Copy in digital format: BIUS00003/Part 1/Health and Wellbeing/HEA01

BREEAM In-Use Assessors can access further guidance on referencing in Assessor Guidance Note 01, and the 'Reporting process' webinar, both available from the BREEAM Assessor Guidance section of the BREEAM Assessor Extranet.

## Evidence types

Evidence does not necessarily need to be prepared specifically for the purpose of the BREEAM In-Use assessment. In many instances, the BREEAM In-Use Assessor should be able to source readily available and prepared building information for the purpose of demonstrating compliance. For this reason, BREEAM In-Use aims to avoid being overly prescriptive on the type of evidence required, although some issues do require specific documents to be provided.

The BREEAM In-Use Assessor and client will find that many assessment issues require more than one piece or type of information to demonstrate compliance with one criterion, or alternatively, one piece of information may be sufficient to demonstrate compliance with multiple criteria.

To assist clients and the BREEAM In-Use Assessor in their collation of information for each assessment Part, the different types of documentation that can be used as evidence of compliance are listed below.

These evidence types fall broadly into three categories:

1. General evidence type
2. Specific evidence type
3. Other evidence type

For some assessment issues, the BREEAM In-Use assessor is likely to require a mixture of general and specific evidence types.

General evidence includes a broad list of defined information commonly produced for a building/project. One or a mix of these types of information can be used to demonstrate compliance for one or more of the BREEAM In-Use issues and criteria, as deemed appropriate by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor for the assessment Part.

General BREEAM In-Use evidence types are listed in Table 9 and are not necessarily specifically listed in the 'Evidence' section found within each BREEAM In-Use issue. Note, not all general evidence types will be appropriate for all issues and it is the responsibility of the BREEAM In-Use Assessor to ensure that the evidence provided specifically demonstrates compliance and is fully referenced.

Specific evidence is defined information that must be provided to verify compliance with the relevant criteria for the BREEAM In-Use credit sought. In all cases it will be the only type of evidence that will be accepted by the BRE Global Ltd for that particular issue/criterion. Where specific evidence is not provided and appropriately referenced in the assessment report, the Quality Assurance checks will identify a non-conformances and certification will be delayed.

When required, specific evidence is defined and listed for each BREEAM In-Use issue in the 'Evidence' section. Although the 'Evidence' section lists the specific evidence required to demonstrate compliance with particular criteria, simply submitting this evidence may not be sufficient to demonstrate full compliance. Additional 'general evidence types' may also be required. Note, not all BREEAM In-Use issues will have specific evidence requirements.

Other types of evidence can still be used to demonstrate compliance where an information type provided by a client is not listed in Table 9 or the 'Evidence' section for each issue. To avoid non-

conformities and delays in certification, undefined alternative types of evidence must demonstrate credible, robust and traceable assurance to the same level as or better than, specified or general evidence types. If in doubt, please contact BREEAM prior to accepting such evidence.

## Evidence principles that BREEAM Assessors and the BRE Global Ltd Quality Assurance work to

As described above, where specific evidence is stated in the 'evidence' table within each assessment issue, this must be sourced and verified by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor.

Where no specific evidence has been listed for an issue or specific criterion, this means that there are potentially a number of different types of 'general' project information, as per Table 9 that can be sourced by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor and used to demonstrate compliance. It is the BREEAM In-Use Assessor's responsibility to source and verify the 'general evidence types' for each relevant criterion, where compliance and credits are being claimed by the client.

In determining the appropriateness of 'general evidence types' for each issue, the principles outlined in Table 8 must be considered by BREEAM Assessors. Where the 'general evidence types' meet the principles outlined in Table 8 and, where appropriate, the guidance provided in the 'robustness of evidence' section, such evidence is admissible for the purpose of the assessment and the BRE Global Quality Assurance checks.

These principles are not listed in a hierarchical order and are all equally important when considering which evidence type to submit to demonstrate compliance for each issue/criterion.

Table 8: BREEAM Evidence principles

	Summary	Principle	Objective	A question to ask to check
1	Evidence provided for all criteria for all credits sought	Evidence must demonstrate that ALL relevant* criteria and sub-criteria for each credit sought are achieved and where relevant, is provided to support compliance notes, definitions etc.	Completeness	Are all criteria and sub-criteria covered? Have all relevant definitions been addressed?
2	Unambiguous assessment	The assessment must demonstrate unambiguous compliance and the evidence must support this assessment. Evidence (and supporting notes) must clearly demonstrate to a 3rd party reviewer that the criteria have been met.	Independent review compatibility.	If a 3rd party (e.g. BRE Global Ltd) reviewed my report with the submitted evidence, would they be able to confirm compliance and award the same credits I have?

	Summary	Principle	Objective	A question to ask to check
3	Robust	<p>a. When selecting the Evidence type, always ensure it is robust and is relevant to the stage of assessment.</p> <p>The selected Evidence contains all the relevant basic information, with the necessary constituent parts to be deemed robust.</p> <p>b.(see Robustness of Evidence section for further details on both of the above)</p>	Proof that evidence is robust and from a reliable source	Is this the most robust form of evidence available to demonstrate compliance with this criterion? Does the evidence contain all the relevant basic information? Is it fully auditable?
4	Use existing evidence	Use existing project information to demonstrate compliance. In most cases evidence shouldn't need to be 'created' for BREEAM compliance purposes.	Minimises evidence and reduces time and cost of compliance.	Does robust evidence meeting the above principles already exist that I can use? If I need to ask for more evidence, is the project seeking credits where compliance is not adequately demonstrated?

\*Where the assessor/design team deem specific criteria 'not relevant' to the assessment, a full justification should be collated and then submitted as a technical query, for review by BRE Global Ltd.

## Robustness of Evidence

Robust evidence provides confirmation that the assessment has been carried out correctly and the asset complies with the criteria for the BREEAM In-Use credits sought. The BREEAM In-Use Assessor should consider the following when gathering project information and evaluating whether the evidence provided is as 'robust' as possible:

- Is there more than one piece of evidence that could be used to demonstrate compliance?
- Is the chosen evidence the most robust and appropriate piece of evidence to demonstrate that a particular criterion has been achieved?

Any evidence submitted for a BREEAM In-Use International assessment must be robust in terms of its source and its traceability. Below is a list of the minimum information the assessor must expect to see, when certain types of evidence are submitted:

- **Communication records:** Any communication records used as evidence must provide clear confirmation of the site name, author's identity and role, the date and recipient(s) identity.

- **Formal letters of correspondence:** Must be on company/organisation headed note-paper with a signature (electronic signatures are acceptable). Ideally letters should be a secured document.
- **Meeting minutes:** Must include date, location and attendee information (names, organisations and roles), along with a record of the meeting and agreed actions.
- **Drawings/site plans/maps/installation diagrams:** All of these documents must have the asset/site name, title of drawing, date, revision number and a scale.
- **Specification/building manual:** A specification/building manual must be clear that it relates to the project under assessment, and it must have a date and revision number. Where sections of a specification are provided the assessor should reference the extract and as a minimum submit the front page of the specification detailing the project name, revision number and date. Specifications must always refer to as built or operational conditions.
- In addition to the list of minimum information, BREEAM strongly advises that assessors have a formal, written site visit report which could act as standalone evidence. The report must contain the registration number, asset/site name, date, author and summary text to detail what was witnessed, confirming compliance. Photographic evidence can be used to support the text in the report, full details of what has been witnessed on site and which credits/criteria the particular comments relate to.

For other types of evidence not listed, the assessor should use Table 9 as a guide. As a minimum the evidence used to assess compliance should always contain key information as the registration number, the project name, the author, date, revision numbers etc.

Table 9: Evidence types

Ref	Document/evidence type	Description/note
E1	Billing data	Evidence in the form of billing that supports the requirements that are outlined in the criteria. Billing data must be from the organisation providing the billed services to the asset.
E2	BRE Global correspondence reference number	For example the reference number for a BRE Global response to an assessors technical query.
E3	BREEAM Assessor's site visit report	A formal report based on the BREEAM In-Use Assessor's own survey of the asset to confirm compliance with BREEAM In-Use criteria. An assessor's site visit report will be distinct from their formal BREEAM In-Use assessment, serving as a form of evidence of compliance in its own right, and it may include photographs taken by the assessor as part of the survey.
E4	Building (Energy) Management Systems(B(E)MS)/Metering data	Evidence on consumption of metered utilities, such as gas, electricity and water. This data can either be from individual sub-meters or collected through B(E)MS that is installed in the asset.
E5	Building information model (BIM)	The BIM (or BIM files) used for the project containing relevant information/evidence of compliance.

Ref	Document/evidence type	Description/note
E6	Calculations	Evidence provided in a calculation format that supports that set targets/thresholds are met within the asset.
E7	Certificates of compliance (third party)	Examples include ISO 14001, FSC (Forest Stewardship Council), EPC (environmental profile certificate), EPD (environmental product declaration) etc.
E8	Communication records	Formal communication records between/from relevant stakeholders and/or other third parties confirming an appointment, action or outcome. This may be in the form of a letter, meeting minutes, email correspondence, publication or another form of media.
E9	Contractual information	Documents/contracts outlining how certain maintenance/monitoring/testing or other service is carried out by a (third) party.
E10	Other third party information	For example, maps, public transport timetables, product data/details, manufacturers' literature, local standards or codes, product labelling.
E11	Photographic evidence	Evidence provided in photographic/photocopy format (either hardcopy or digitally) that supports that building services/elements or other relevant infrastructure or product is in place/installed at the asset.
E12	Professional services contract	An agreement to provide professional or consulting services such as: maintenance, testing, or legal or technical advice.
E13	Risk assessment	The risk assessment considers the various operational risks and other risks on a project and how each risk will be managed and the party responsible for managing each risk.
E14	Specialist reports	Professional reports resulting from specialist surveys/studies/test results including (but not limited to): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Environmental Management Systems/Plans</li> <li>• flood risk assessment</li> <li>• acoustics</li> <li>• indoor air quality</li> <li>• transportation analysis</li> <li>• commissioning and maintenance reports and strategies</li> <li>• landscape and habitat management plan</li> <li>• Legionella management plan, etc.</li> </ul>

Ref	Document/evidence type	Description/note
		These surveys/studies/test results are often carried out by suitably qualified persons/organisations.
E15	Staff interviews	Interviews with staff members that support that specified (management) are being carried out in the asset. Staff interviews are an important part of the verification that formal processes/procedures/documents are made available to staff/building users.

## Assessment criteria

A BREEAM In-Use assessment is conducted by answering asset, operational and/or occupier specific questions within the Part for which the assessment is undertaken. Each Part has been divided into the relevant categories that are applicable to it containing issues that relate to the specific requirements.

Each BREEAM issue is structured as follows:

1. **Issue information:** This is in the title of the issue and contains the assessment issue reference, name, number of credits available and whether the issue forms part of BREEAM In-Use International's minimum standards.
2. **Question:** This contains the question(s) that is asked to assess the BREEAM In-Use assessment issue.
3. **Aim:** This outlines the broad objective of the issue and the impact it measures/mitigates.
4. **Available credits:** This outlines the answer options to the question and the credits that are available for each of the answer options.
5. **Assessment criteria:** This section outlines the requirements that must be met in order for credits to be awarded. The information outlined in this section can include tables of benchmarks or asset type specific performance criteria.
6. **Evidence:** This section describes the type(s) of information that must be provided by the client and given to the BREEAM In-Use Assessor to enable verification of the asset's performance against the assessment criteria as required for certification. The evidence justifies the awarding of the relevant number of BREEAM In-Use credits. The BREEAM In-Use International evidence requirements section provides further guidance on general evidence requirements but wherever possible, evidence should not be produced specifically for the purposes of the BREEAM assessment.
7. **Additional information:** This section contains any further information relevant to the application of the assessment criteria, including any definition of terms used in the assessment issue or sources of additional information that may be of use in addressing the issue.

## Using the technical manual to complete an assessment

Assessments are carried out using the BREEAM In-Use online tool which contains all questions relating to the Parts and categories. These questions are the same as those listed in the technical manual under **Question** (2). This document is intended to assist clients and assessors in understanding and interpreting the questions, their background and how they affect the assessment results.

The client and/or assessor will answer the questions with the answer option that reflects the current situation within the asset that is being assessed. The answer options and the available credits are listed in the technical manual under **Available credits** (4). In order to assist the client and assessor to select the appropriate answer options, the aim of the credit, listed under **Aim** (3), and the **Assessment criteria** (5) can be used. These sections list the criteria that must be met in order to award a certain number of available credits.

The **Evidence** (6) section outlines what types of specific evidence relating to the question could be supplied in addition to the general evidence requirements as outlined under **Evidence requirements for BREEAM In-Use International**. Any additional information in which relevant definitions or other information is outlined can be found under **Additional information** (7).

The layout of the technical manual reflects the way in which information is entered within the BREEAM In-Use online tool. Each Part has its own specific section in which all the relevant

information is outlined. In line with the BREEAM In-Use online tool, the manual outlines what building/asset specific related information must be completed prior to starting the BREEAM In-Use assessment. These can be found under the **Building Details** section.

The following sections of this manual set out the specific questions and requirements as described above and is organised into the 3 Parts each containing the issues and questions relating specifically to that Part. This is followed by an Annex setting out details for Part 3 assessments of Office buildings only.

# Building Details

## Asset

The following details should be entered when an asset is created.

**Note:** Questions marked \* are mandatory.

### Basic Asset Details

- Asset Manager\* – Select the asset manager.
- Name of Asset\* – Enter the name of the asset.  
**Note:** The name of the asset entered here will appear above the assets address on any certificates produced for this asset. Certificate shows a maximum of 28 characters.
- Asset Description – Enter a short description of the asset.  
**Note:** Asset Description cannot be more than 500 characters
- Year Built\* – Select the year in which the asset was constructed
- In which year was the recent major refurbishment – Select the year of the most recent major refurbishment

### Full Asset Address

- Address Line1\* – First line of address for the asset (if the asset only comprises of part of a building, additional details relating to the entire building should also be entered).
- Address Line2 – Second line of address for the asset  
**Note:** Address line 1 and Address line 2 will be combined as a single line on the certificate and a maximum of 28 characters will be shown
- Address Line3 – Third line of address for the asset
- Address Line4 – Fourth line of address for the asset  
**Note:** Address line 3 and Address line 4 will be combined as a single line on the certificate and a maximum of 28 characters will be shown
- Town/City\* – Address Town or City
- Country\* – Select country
- County/Region\* – Select county or region
- Postcode/ZIP code\* – Address Postcode or Zip code

## Basic Building Details

Basic building details should be completed when a measurement is created. This section is divided into three: Ownership/Occupancy Details, Asset Dimensions, and Asset Type.

**Note:** Questions marked \* are mandatory.

### Ownership/Occupancy Details

#### Asset Ownership/Occupier

Asset Ownership/Occupier contains questions about the asset owner and its occupier(s). Filling out this data will assist in determining who carries the responsibility for carrying out or implementing the requirements as outlined in the criteria.

- Name of the organisation or person that owns the asset\* – Enter the name of the person or organisation that owns the asset.
- Name of the organisation that manages the tenancy of the asset\* – Enter the name of the organisation that manages the tenancy of the asset.
- Name of the organisation or person that occupies/leases the asset\* – Enter the name of the organisation or person that occupies/leases the asset.
- Name of the organisation leading the BREEAM In-Use assessment\* – Enter the name of the organisation leading the BREEAM In-Use assessment.

#### Occupancy

Occupancy contains questions about the number of occupants and operating hours. Filling out this data will assist in determining whether requirements relating to services or fixtures that have been provided to occupants have been met.

- Number of occupants – Enter the number of occupants.

**Note:** To calculate the number of full time occupiers:

Divide the total hours worked by contracted building occupants during the reporting period by the total number of contracted building occupants.

Then divide the answer by the typical number of hours within the period, assuming that a typical working day is 8 hours and the typical number of working days in a full reporting year is 250.

- Annual operational days – Enter the total number of days per year that the asset is operating.
- Daily operational hours – Enter the total number of hours per day that the asset is operating

## Asset Dimensions

### Asset Dimensions

- Planning restrictions\* – Select any planning restrictions that might be in place.
- Width (external) (m) – Enter the building width in m. This is only the width of external façade.
- Length (external) (m) – Enter the building length in m. This is only the length of external façade.
- Height (floor-to-floor height) (m) – Enter the floor to floor height in m
- Basic asset shape (aerial view of asset) – Select the shape that best represents the plan of your building (if the shape varies please choose the shape that represents the majority of the building).
- Number of floor above ground – Enter the number of floors above ground in your building
- Number of floors below ground – Enter the number of floors below ground in your building

The following questions relating to the floor area of the asset **only refer to the area of the asset that will be assessed**. Please refer to Eligibility criteria for further details.

- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>)\* – Enter the Gross Internal Area (GIA) in m<sup>2</sup>.

The Gross Internal Area is the area of an asset measured to the internal face of the perimeter walls at each floor level.

In a single occupier asset, the GIA should equal the GLA. In a multi-tenanted asset, the GIA is the sum of Gross Lettable Area (GLA) and Non-lettable Area (NLA).

Furthermore, for the purposes of BREEAM In-Use:

- If an assessment is only carried out for the common areas, the GIA equals NLA.
- If an assessment is carried out for a multi-tenanted asset's common areas AND tenanted areas that are managed by the asset's facility/building manager, the GIA should equal the sum of NLA and GLA of the tenanted areas.

The assessor **must** ensure that **all** consumption data that is filled out in the BREEAM In-Use tool relates to the area filled in.

If the asset comprises multiple types, the GIA must be equal to the sum of the floor area of all asset types.

- Non-lettable Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the building's Non-lettable Area (NLA) in m<sup>2</sup>.

Non-lettable areas or common areas are understood to be floor space area within a building from which no income can be derived. Examples include common use areas, lift lobbies, stairwells, plant and technical rooms, management offices or rooms, non-exclusive public spaces and thoroughfares.

Within BREEAM In-Use, it has been agreed that parking areas, whether enclosed, multi-storey or surface facilities, will be **excluded** from non-lettable areas.

- Gross Lettable Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the building's Gross Lettable Area (GLA) in m<sup>2</sup>

Gross lettable area of an asset is the floor space contained within a tenancy at each floor level measured from the inside of main faces of external walls and, where applicable, the inside faces of internal inter-tenancy, partition and common area walls.

Within BREEAM In-Use, it has been agreed that parking areas, whether enclosed, multi-storey or surface facilities, will be **excluded** from gross lettable areas.

- Area covered by hard landscaping (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the area covered by hard landscaping in m<sup>2</sup>
- Area covered by soft landscaping (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the area covered by soft landscaping in m<sup>2</sup>

### **Additional information**

These fields can be used to enter any additional information related to the asset dimensions that could assist the client and/or assessor in completing the assessment.

## Asset Type

Asset Type contains questions relating to the space type(s) within the asset.

**Note:** Questions marked \* are mandatory, as the inputs are used to generate the energy scores. If the asset comprises multiple types, the Gross Internal floor Area filled in under Asset Dimensions must be equal to the sum of all asset types.

- Asset Type 1\* – Select the main asset type.
- Asset Subtype 1\* – Select the main asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>)\* – Enter the main asset type Gross Internal Area.
- Asset Type 2 – Select the second asset type.
- Asset Subtype 2 – Select the second asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the second asset type Gross Internal Area.
- Asset Type 3 – Select the third asset type.
- Asset Subtype 3 – Select the third asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the third asset type Gross Internal Area.
- Asset Type 4 – Select the fourth asset type.
- Asset Subtype 4 – Select the fourth asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the fourth asset type Gross Internal Area.
- Asset Type 5 – Select the fifth asset type.
- Asset Subtype 5 – Select the fifth asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the fifth asset type Gross Internal Area.

# Part 1: Asset Performance

# Management

The management category is not assessed within Part 1 of a BREEAM In-Use assessment.

# Health and Wellbeing

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
HEA 01	Glazing	2
HEA 02	Glare control	4
HEA 03	Thermal control	4
HEA 04	Ventilation controls	2
HEA 05	Microbial contamination	2
HEA 06	Water provisions	2
HEA 07	Indoor and/or outdoor space	4
HEA 08	Illuminance levels (Lux)	4
HEA 09	Lighting control	4
HEA 10	Inclusive design	3
HEA 11	Ventilation requirements	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>33</b>

## Asset Performance HEA 01 – Glazing

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What percentage of the building envelope is glazed?

### Aim

To ensure building users have access to sufficient daylight.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	<1%
1	>1 to ≤10%
2	>10%

### Assessment criteria

1. Glazed areas include roof lights that let daylight pass directly into the building.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of all sides of building envelope.
2. Building elevations specifying height and width of building and all windows,
3. Calculation specifying the total glazed area as a percentage of the building envelope.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Building envelope:** the physical separator between the interior (often conditioned) of the building and the outdoor environment. It includes the walls, roof and foundation. For the purposes of this BREEAM In-Use issue, only the walls and roof need to be taken into account.

## Asset Performance HEA 02 – Glare control

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What glare control features have been fitted to the building?

### Aim

To reduce problems associated with glare in internal occupied areas.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	Glare control feature on all south facing (northern hemisphere) /north facing (southern hemisphere) windows, with control by the occupant
2	Glare control feature on all south facing (northern hemisphere) /north facing (southern hemisphere) windows, with automatic control
2	Glare control feature on all: south (northern hemisphere)/north (southern hemisphere), east and west facing windows with control by the occupant
3	Glare control feature on all: south (northern hemisphere)/north (southern hemisphere), east and west facing windows with automatic control
3	All windows have manually controlled solar shading
4	All windows have automatically controlled solar shading
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Glare control should be provided for relevant building areas where lighting and glare could be problematic for building users, e.g. workstations, projector screens and sports halls.
2. Curtains do not meet the criteria for the glare control requirement as the control/design needs to allow a degree of flexibility to still allow sunlight in. The use of curtains to control glare would cause occupants to rely on artificial lighting to a greater extent.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of glare control features.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

Glare control features may include (but are not limited to):

- a) Brise-soleil: sun shading system for building solar control and protection from excessive solar light and heat.
- b) Low eaves.
- c) Bioclimatic design to provide shading from high level summer and low level winter sun.
- d) Internal blinds.
- e) Tinted/opaque windows.

## Asset Performance HEA 03 – Thermal control

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Do occupants of the asset have personal control over the temperature in their work area?

### Aim

To recognise the provision of asset temperature controls that allow for independent adjustment of heating/cooling systems.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, can open windows
2	Yes, can adjust temperature (using thermostat or thermostatic radiator valve (TRV))
2	Yes, can adjust airspeed
4	Yes, can adjust more than one of the above
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Local occupant control is available for temperature adjustment in separate zones.
2. Zoning refers to adequate sections of the building. For example, zoning should consider the different requirements for the central core of a building compared with the external perimeter adjacent to the windows.

### Building specific Assessment criteria

#### Retail

1. Asset temperature control within retail centres is required at shop unit level. Temperature control within common areas must still be adjustable at the building management level.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of controls.
2. Building plans illustrating zoned areas.

3. Short description of the zoning strategy that has been provided by the facilities management or building management team.
4. Heating control plans.

### **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance HEA 04 – Ventilation controls

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is there provision for personal control of ventilation for building occupants by enabling them to open windows or modify rates of air supply?

### Aim

To recognise the provision of controls allowing comfort level optimisation by building occupants.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Ideally sufficient provision requires ventilation rates (via windows or mechanical ventilation) to be adjustable within defined zones.
2. Zones should adequately reflect the sections of the building. For example, zoning should consider the different requirements for the central core of a building compared with the external perimeter adjacent to the windows.

### Evidence

1. For naturally ventilated areas:
  - a) Photographic evidence of window location and opening mechanisms.
2. For mechanically ventilated areas:
  - a) Formal organisational documentation, such as operation and maintenance manual confirming the scope of thermal zoning and the method of control.

### Additional information

#### Other information

Provision of electric desk top fans does not count as a means of ventilation.

## Asset Performance HEA 05 – Microbial contamination

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Has a study been carried out to identify the most effective system to minimise the risk of Legionella contamination?

### Aim

To ensure the most effective and properly designed control systems are installed and to avoid risk of Legionellosis.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. The study that will determine the most effective system to minimise the risk of Legionellosis must be carried out by a suitable, qualified professional. The study would also indicate where Legionella control systems are not deemed necessary.
2. Any water system that is at risk of Legionella contamination should have the appropriate Legionella control systems installed. Water systems that are at risk of such contamination include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Cooling towers
  - b) Evaporative condenser
  - c) Domestic hot and cold water systems
  - d) Other plant and systems containing water which is likely to exceed 20°C and which may release a spray or aerosol during operation or when being maintained. Examples include, but are not limited to:
    - i. Humidifiers and air washers
    - ii. Spa baths and pools
    - iii. Car/bus washing points
    - iv. Wet scrubbers
    - v. Indoor fountains and water features

## Evidence

1. Copy of study that identifies the most effective method to avoid the risk of Legionellosis. The conclusion of this study must outline what system should be installed. Where no such systems are deemed necessary, this must be outlined in the study.
2. Where Legionella control systems have been installed, a copy of the operational manual/manufacture specification indicating the type of Legionella control should be provided.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Legionellosis (Legionnaires' disease):** A type of pneumonia caused by the bacterium Legionella pneumophila. People catch Legionnaires' disease by inhaling small droplets of water suspended in the air, which contain the bacteria.

### Other information

Several methods to minimise the risk of Legionellosis currently exist. These include, but are not limited to:

- a) Risk management through a thermal process (temperature control)
- b) Risk management through a chemical process (e.g. chlorination, ozone, copper and silver ionisation)
- c) Risk management through a non-chemical process (e.g. U.V. irradiation, ultrasound)

## Asset Performance HEA 06 – Water provisions

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is drinking water provided for occupants?

### Aim

To ensure the provision of fresh drinking water for building occupants.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, point of use not connected to mains supply
2	Yes, point of use connected to mains supply

### Assessment criteria

1. Drinking water access points need to be:
  - a) Appropriate in number and placement to serve all building users; as determined by the assessor's best judgement.
  - b) In a hygienic location and condition.
  - c) Freely available and accessible.
2. The following types of water dispensers do not comply with the criteria of this issue:
  - a) Mains fed taps in toilet areas (**note**: taps in kitchen areas are compliant).
3. The provision of drinking water applies to building occupants that are members of staff. This means that visitors to the asset are not included.

### Building specific Assessment criteria

#### Retail

1. For a retail centre, adequate provision of drinking water should be provided for (but not limited to):
  - a) all tenants and their members of staff
  - b) building management personnel
  - c) security staff

- d) cleaners
- e) (where applicable) all office workers (or other members of staff related to the space use) in the building

## **Evidence**

1. Photograph of water access points.
2. Building plans with access points identified.

## **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance HEA 07 – Indoor and/or outdoor space

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are indoor rest and/or outdoor spaces provided for building occupants?

### Aim

To recognise the provision of space that is to be used for breaks from the working environment.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Lounge/Dining areas
2	Dedicated outdoor space with seating sheltered from wind and/or rain (located at least 10 metres away from roads, car parks or other sources of pollution)
2	Tea/coffee points with seating
2	Canteen facilities
4	Combination of 2 or more of the above
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Resting space should:
  - a) Be of an adequate size. Adequate size is based on providing seating space for over 10% of building occupiers.
  - b) Be accessible via safe pedestrian routes.
  - c) Provide building users with an area that is private and not susceptible to disturbance from sources of noise such as building services, car parks, delivery areas etc.
2. Resting space does not necessarily have to be provided within the asset, however: building users must have free and unrestricted access during working hours.

## Building specific Assessment criteria

### Retail

1. Shopping centres should base their occupancy figures on average customer footfall.
2. Common rest areas may include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Benches placed within the asset
  - b) Food outlets with seating provision within the asset
3. Indoor and/or outdoor spaces refer to common areas shared with customers/visitors)
4. Food courts and restaurants count towards seating space provision.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence, demonstrating provisions available to building occupants.
2. Building plans illustrating seating areas within asset.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Lounge/dining areas:** areas that are accessible to all building users, including visitors and staff, where they can have a break from the working environment. These areas contain comfortable seating and tables and are designed for longer breaks. (Hot) food and drinks could be provided for.

**Tea/coffee points:** areas that are accessible to all staff. These areas are designed for short breaks. (Hot) drinks, such as tea and coffee, are provided for. Provisions to prepare food could be provided for.

**Canteen facilities:** areas that are accessible to all staff. These areas are designed for longer breaks and contain comfortable seating and table. (Hot) food and drinks or provisions to prepare these are provided for. Other building users, such as visitors to the asset, could have access to these areas.

## Asset Performance HEA 08 – Illuminance levels (Lux)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Do internal and external lighting levels meet national guidance best practice levels?

### Aim

To ensure optimum visual comfort for building occupants.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes, illuminance levels meet national guidance best practice levels

### Assessment criteria

1. Lighting levels should be measured in relevant building areas by a suitably qualified person or organisation.
2. A suitably qualified person or organisation is a person/organisation that has experience in undertaking lighting measurements. They must use the appropriately tested and calibrated equipment (lux meter) to undertake the lighting assessment.
3. Credits may not be awarded if light fittings need to be removed or lights covered.
4. National best practice lighting guides: Where appropriate lighting guides do not exist for a country, the design team should demonstrate compliance with the European standards EN 12464-1 Light and lighting - Lighting of workspaces, 2011 and EN 12464-2 Lighting of work places - Part 2: Outdoor work places, 2007.

### Evidence

1. Third party documentation or organisational documentation confirming the lighting levels in relevant building areas.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Relevant building area:** occupied space which is a room or space within the assessed building that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by a building user. The following internal areas are excluded from the requirements:

1. Media and arts production spaces.

2. Sports facilities (exercise spaces only, including hydrotherapy and physiotherapy areas).

## Asset Performance HEA 09 – Lighting control

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

To what extent do occupants have control over the lighting in their work area?

### Aim

To optimise the level of occupant control over lighting in relevant building areas.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	None
2	Automatic lighting controls per zone with manual override
4	Automatic lighting controls per zone with manual override with provision of task lighting where requested
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Common control systems that would satisfy this credit include:
  - a) Daylight sensors that switch lights off when daylight levels are high with manual over-ride facilities for building occupants
  - b) Infra-red or movement detectors that switch lighting on/off in zones with manual over-ride facilities for building occupants
2. Zoning refers to adequate sections of the building. For example, zoning should consider the different requirements for the central core of a building compared with the external perimeter adjacent to the windows. Zoning of lighting controls is to be as follows:
  - a) In office areas, zones of no more than four workplaces
  - b) Workstations adjacent to windows/atria and other building areas separately zoned and controlled
  - c) Seminar and lecture rooms: zoned for presentation and audience areas
  - d) Library spaces: separate zoning of stacks, reading and counter areas
  - e) Teaching space/demonstration area
  - f) Whiteboard/display screen

- g) Auditoria: zoning of seating areas, circulation space and lectern area
  - h) Dining, restaurant, café areas: separate zoning of servery and seating/dining areas
  - i) Retail: separate zoning of display and counter areas
  - j) Bar areas: separate zoning of bar and seating areas
3. The following internal areas are excluded from the lighting zone requirements:
- a) Media and arts production spaces.
  - b) Sports facilities (exercise spaces only, including hydrotherapy and physiotherapy areas).

## Evidence

1. Where automatic/management systems have been installed, this should include how building occupants can over-ride it. This could include (but is not limited to):
  - a) Installation diagrams
  - b) Copy of building user guide outlining lighting controls
  - c) Photographic evidence of lighting controls
2. Manufacturer information.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Relevant building area:** occupied space which is a room or space within the assessed building that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by a building user.

### Other information

There are many types of lighting control systems, but the main focus of this credit is the level of control that occupants have over the lighting of the space or room. As this credit is aimed at health and wellbeing and not energy consumption, it is important that the occupant has the ability to manually override the lighting controls per zone to suit his/her needs.

## Asset Performance HEA 10 – Inclusive design

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

### Question

Does the asset contain features, beyond those specified by local legislation, which enable full use by less able-bodied persons?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage assets that are functional and inclusive for all its users.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
3	Yes
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Features contained in the asset that enable full use by persons that are less able-bodied, must be in addition to local legislation. Features that have been provided for should include (but are not limited to) the following as guidance:
  - a) The approach to all entrances should be level or gently sloping
  - b) Entrances should be illuminated
  - c) There should be space for turning a wheelchair in hallways and work areas, and adequate circulation space for wheelchairs elsewhere
  - d) Designated WC's should be easily accessible, correctly signposted and provision based on the number of and location of users
  - e) Hand rails should be provided for ease of manoeuvrability
  - f) Where applicable, lifts should be provided to allow less able-bodied persons access to all levels
  - g) Evacuation procedures should take into account needs of less able-bodied individuals. For example: providing evacuation chairs, specific features for visual and hearing impaired people.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of listed features

2. Building plans outlining installed features
3. Specifications of installed features

### **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance HEA 11 – Ventilation requirements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Does the asset meet the requirements for either natural ventilation or mechanical ventilation as outlined in the Assessment criteria?

### Aim

To ensure that ventilation systems within the asset do not circulate air which has the potential to be contaminated with exterior sources of pollution AND that re-circulation within the asset is minimised.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

#### For natural ventilation

Openable windows/ventilators within the building are located at least 10m from roads, car parks and other potential sources of pollution, and all extracts are at least 10m from any opening to minimise re-circulation within the building.

#### For mechanical and mixed-mode ventilation

Air intakes and exhausts are over 10m apart to minimise recirculation and intakes are over 20m from sources of external pollution. These include, but are not limited to:

1. Highways and the main access roads.
2. Car parks and delivery/vehicle waiting bays.
3. Other building exhausts, including from building services plant, industrial/agricultural processes, and smoking rooms/areas.

### Evidence

1. In the case of natural ventilation:
  - a) Photographic evidence or a copy of site plan which clearly indicates that the building location complies with the conditions specified, such as scaled drawings or on-site measurements.
2. In the case of mechanical ventilation:

- a) Photographic evidence or a copy of site plan which identifies the location of intake points and clearly indicates that they comply with the conditions specified, such as scaled drawings or on-site measurements.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

The distance requirement for air intakes and extracts does not necessarily mean the plan distance, but the three dimensional distance around and over objects; e.g. on plan the air intakes may be less than 20m from a source of external pollution, but the intake may be on the roof of a 10 storey building and therefore over 20m from the source of pollution.

# Energy

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
ENE 01	Heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC)	Up to 100 credits are available. Credits are calculated within the Energy Model
ENE 02	Ventilation strategy	
ENE 03	Heat loss	
ENE 04	Pressure/air leakage test	
ENE 05	Heating	
ENE 06	Boiler efficiency	
ENE 07	Heat pump efficiency	
ENE 08	Fuel usage for heat generation	
ENE 09	Heat distribution	
ENE 10	Heat emitter type	
ENE 11	Mechanical and electrical heating equipment	
ENE 12	Cooling system	
ENE 13	Efficiency of cooling system	
ENE 14	Cooling distribution	
ENE 15	Heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) efficiency	
ENE 16	Refrigerant cooling system	
ENE 17	Cooling emitter type	
ENE 18	Glazing	
ENE 19	Mechanical and electrical cooling equipment	
ENE 20	Specific fan power	
ENE 21	Leakage tests	
ENE 22	Mechanical and electrical ventilation equipment	
ENE 23	Water heating	

<b>Issue reference</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Credits available</b>
ENE 24	Water heating energy sources	Credits are calculated within the Energy Model
ENE 25	High frequency ballast	
ENE 26	Internal lighting types	
ENE 27	Automatic lighting controls	
ENE 28	Occupancy sensors	
ENE 29	Legislation	3
ENE 30	Onsite renewables	5
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>108</b>

# Asset Energy Calculator Guidance

## Introduction

This section has been produced to give BREEAM In-Use assessors further guidance on the workings of the asset energy calculator so it is clear how any improvements to the asset performance can be reflected in the calculation of the asset energy rating.

## Overview

The first step to generating the BREEAM In-Use International asset energy score is to assess the performance of a number of energy end use components, listed in Table 10.

In order to assess the performance of the end use component, a number of parameters (subcomponents) that have the greatest impact on the end use component score have been determined. The subcomponents contributing to the end use component score are listed in Table 10.

Table 10: Energy end use components and subcomponents

End use component	Subcomponent
Heating	Building Fabric – Thermal Conductance Building Fabric – Air Leakage Rate Ventilation Heat Recovery Efficiency of Heat Generation
Cooling	Solar Gains Building Fabric – Air Leakage Rate Efficiency of Cooling Generation
Heating Distribution	Efficiency of Heating Distribution
Cooling Distribution	Efficiency of Cooling Distribution
Lighting	Efficiency of Lighting Installation
Ventilation	Fan Efficiency Duct Leakage Air Handling Unit Leakage
Hot Water	Efficiency of Heat Generation

## Subcomponents

The individual subcomponent scores are calculated by comparing actual performance to a benchmark best practice value. The actual performance is determined by answering the relevant questions in the energy category in Part 1.

The paragraphs below give a further explanation about the calculation of the subcomponent scores.

## Heating

Four subcomponents contribute to the heating end use component score: fabric performance, building infiltration rate, efficiency of heat generation and ventilation heat recovery efficiency.

It is possible to make improvements to the heating end use component score by addressing each of these subcomponents and making improvements to:

1. The fabric performance: maximum score awarded for an external wall u-value of less than 0.17 W/m<sup>2</sup>K
2. The building infiltration rate: maximum score awarded for infiltration of less than 2.5m<sup>3</sup>/m<sup>2</sup> at 50Pa
3. The heat generator efficiency: maximum score awarded for efficiency equivalent to an electric heat pump with a COP of 7
4. The ventilation heat recovery: maximum score awarded for ventilation heat recovery efficiency of 95%

It should be noted that it is not possible to enter a value for ventilation heat recovery directly into the tool. Instead, the tool uses a default value based on the age of the heating system (where applicable).

## Cooling

There are three subcomponents that contribute to the cooling end use component score: solar gain, building infiltration rate and efficiency of cooling generation.

It is possible to make improvements to the cooling end use component score by addressing each of these subcomponents and making improvements to:

1. Glazing area (as a proxy for solar gains): maximum score awarded for glazing area less than 25% of total façade area
2. The building infiltration rate: maximum score awarded for infiltration of less than 2.5m<sup>3</sup>/m<sup>2</sup> at 50Pa
3. The cooling generator efficiency: maximum score awarded for efficiency equivalent to electric chiller with a COP of 7

## Heating distribution

The heating distribution end use component score is a function of the efficiency of the distribution system and the efficiency of the heat emitter.

Fixed efficiencies are assigned for the building in question in response to the user response to questions which ask for these system details.

The maximum score is achieved where there is no heat distribution i.e. 'local heating'.

## Cooling distribution

The cooling distribution end use component score is a function of the efficiency of the distribution system and the efficiency of the cooling emitter.

Fixed efficiencies are assigned for the building in question in response to the user response to questions which ask for these system details.

The maximum score is achieved where there is no cooling distribution i.e. 'local cooling'.

## Lighting

The lighting end use component score is a function of both the type of light fittings installed, and the lighting controls.

The lighting score can be improved by upgrading light fittings, or introducing automatic lighting controls where not already installed.

The most efficient lamp types are LED lighting (with special design lighting control system) and T5 fluorescents. The least efficient lamp types are tungsten halogen and incandescent lamps.

Where fluorescent lamps are installed, the score is improved where they are fitted with high frequency ballasts.

The maximum score is achieved where either LED lighting (with special control) or T5 lamps (with high frequency ballasts) are used with automatic controls covering 75% or more of the floor area not accessible to clients or customers.

Where more than one lamp type is installed, the score is calculated on an area weighted basis.

## Ventilation

The ventilation end use component score is a function of three subcomponents: fan efficiency, duct leakage and air handling unit leakage.

The ventilation end use component score can be improved by:

1. Improving fan efficiency: maximum score awarded for a fan efficiency of 1 W/l/s or less
2. Improving air leakage rates (and undertaking necessary testing to demonstrate compliance): maximum score awarded for Class A test results

## Hot water

The hot water end use component score is a function of the type of system and the fuel type used for water generation.

The maximum score is achieved for point of use generation using any fuel type other than electric.

## Subcomponent and End use component scores

Once the individual subcomponent scores have been generated, they are multiplied by a weighting factor, which reflects the influence that the subcomponent has on the overall performance of the respective end use component. All weighted subcomponent scores are then summed to generate the main end use component score.

In order to generate the overall asset energy rating, it is necessary to take account of the influence that each energy end use component has on the total building energy consumption. Therefore, the end use components are weighted, reflecting the importance of the individual end use component in terms of its contribution to the overall energy consumption. The end use component weighting factors vary according to:

- a) building type, to reflect different energy end use patterns
- b) asset location, to reflect differences in climate and associated heating or cooling demand

The weighting factors would for example reflect the fact that a large proportion of the energy consumption in a retail building would typically be associated with lighting, or that an office in a hot country would expect to use more energy for cooling than the same office in a colder country.

The performance of each end use component is only assessed where that end use is present in the building that is being assessed. If a particular project does not have one or more of the end use components, the available asset energy score is distributed across the other end use components that are present. Table 11 illustrates how the end use component weighting factors for heating, lighting and hot water increase for a naturally ventilated office without cooling, compared to an air conditioned office with mechanical ventilation.

Table 11: End use component weighting factors

Open Plan Office	End Use Component Weighting						
	Heating	Heating Distribution	Cooling	Cooling Distribution	Lighting	Mechanical Ventilation	Hot Water
Servicing strategy							
Cooling & Mechanical Ventilation	39.9	7.34	17.71	7.34	9.94	14.47	4.32
Naturally Ventilated	64.41	12.09	0	0	16.38	0	7.12

A further adjustment is then applied to the heating, heating distribution, cooling, and cooling distribution benchmarks to account for local climatic conditions.

## Final score

The final score is calculated by adding together the weighted end use component scores. It is now possible to obtain an asset energy rating output when any Part 1 assessment is submitted to the BIU team for an unverified score or certification.

## Primary energy metric

It should be noted that the metric used to assess asset energy performance is primary energy, where 'primary energy' means energy from renewable and non-renewable sources which has not undergone any conversion or transformation process.

## Asset energy calculator inputs

There are 2 levels of user input information that inform the calculation of the asset energy score.

**Level 1:** the user must enter information on the building type, age of the building, and the servicing strategy. The building age is therefore one of the mandatory pieces of information that the user has to provide, along with building type, building services, and servicing strategy – to establish end use component weightings – and the building location – to inform the climate adjustment made to the end use weightings

**Level 2:** the user can enter further information to describe the performance of various systems; user response to these questions is optional.

If the user is unable to answer any questions describing building performance, the tool will use default lookup values for the calculation. These values are based on either:

- the last time the relevant system was replaced, if known, or
- the age of the building

Figure 4 illustrates the above logic and calculation of the asset energy calculation score.

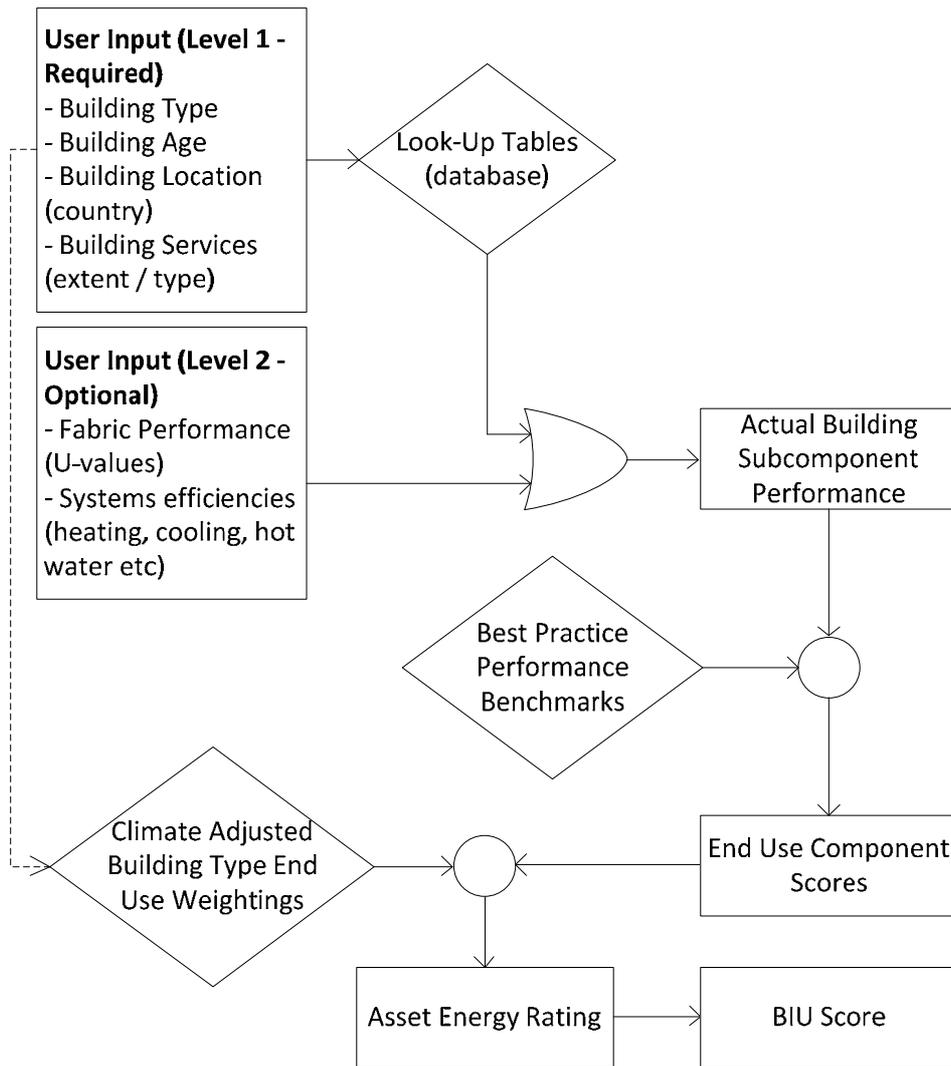


Figure 4: Asset energy calculation flowchart

## Asset Performance ENE 01 – Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards	Mandatory question
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No	Yes

### Question

What building services are present in the asset?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Heating only
-	Heating and cooling
-	Cooling only
-	None
-	Hot water only
-	Heating and hot water
-	Heating and cooling and hot water
-	Cooling and hot water

### Assessment criteria

1. Building services include any fixed cooling, hot water or heating systems that are installed within the asset. These systems can either service the whole asset or part thereof. Building services include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Local hot water
  - b) Point of use hot water systems
  - c) Boilers
  - d) Heat pumps
  - e) Chillers
  - f) Local heaters
  - g) Local split air conditioning systems

- h) Fully centralised air conditioning systems
- 2. Heating/cooling systems can be excluded from the calculation where the heated or cooled area equates to less than 10% of overall floor area.

## **Evidence**

One of the following is acceptable:

1. Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of listed system(s).
2. Extract of Operational & Maintenance (O&M) manuals listing all building services that are present in the building.
3. Installation diagrams.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

This question must be answered in order to generate the asset energy rating (along with: building type, building age, building location, and building ventilation strategy).

## Asset Performance ENE 02 – Ventilation strategy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards	Mandatory question
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No	Yes

### Question

What is the ventilation strategy for the building (Natural or Mechanical)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Natural ventilation
-	Mechanical ventilation
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

- Assessors need to confirm that the specified ventilation systems are in use.
- For the purposes of this BREEAM In-Use issue:
  - A mechanically ventilated building is a building with a centralised mechanical ventilation system, or mixed mode building. Typically, a mechanically ventilated building will provide both supply and extract.
  - A naturally ventilated building is a building that is designed to be capable of providing fresh air entirely by natural ventilation strategy (with the exception of local mechanical extracts).
- If both ventilation systems are in use in the building, the selection must be mechanical unless this usage is negligible.

### Evidence

- Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of ventilation system.
- Extract of O&M manual listing ventilation systems that are present in the building Installation diagrams.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

This question must be answered in order to generate the asset energy rating (along with: building type, building age, building location, and building services).

## Asset Performance ENE 03 – Heat loss

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Please provide the design U-Values of the external walls (W/m<sup>2</sup>K):

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	The design U-value of the walls (W/m <sup>2</sup> K)

### Assessment criteria

1. U-Values of the building external walls can be determined through:
  - a) A copy of design specifications indicating the design U-value of the assets walls
  - b) National building regulation providing an indication of U-value figure
  - c) Site investigation e.g. building surveyor with appropriate knowledge of prevalent construction methods; this could be the assessor

**Note:** If the U-values differ between the external walls please enter the average U-value.

**Note:** U-values entered must be between 0.17 and 2 W/m<sup>2</sup>K. If the U-value is outside of the permitted values, please enter the upper or lower limit as appropriate.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of building wall construction (if possible).
2. Building design plans.
3. Written details of the National building regulations stating the minimum U-value at the time the asset was constructed.
4. Expert report by a building surveyor or equivalent estimating the U-value

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**U-value:** is a measure of heat loss in a building element such as a wall, floor or roof that measures the effectiveness of a material as an insulator. The U-value figure of the external walls is used to assess the overall fabric performance of the asset. A lower U-value indicates a higher level of thermal efficiency.

## Asset Performance ENE 04 – Pressure/air leakage test

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the result of the building pressure/air leakage test?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	$\leq 2.5 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}/\text{m}^2 @ 50 \text{ Pa}$
-	$> 2.5 \text{ to } \leq 5 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}/\text{m}^2 @ 50 \text{ Pa}$
-	$> 5 \text{ to } \leq 10 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}/\text{m}^2 @ 50 \text{ Pa}$
-	$> 10 \text{ to } \leq 15 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}/\text{m}^2 @ 50 \text{ Pa}$
-	$> 15 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}/\text{m}^2 @ 50 \text{ Pa}$
-	Untested

### Assessment criteria

- Assessors should verify:
  - The results of building pressure/air leakage tests
  - That testing was conducted by relevant competent persons
- The appropriate standard for air leakage testing is: ISO 9972:2006/EN 13829:2000 Thermal performance of buildings - Determination of air permeability of buildings - Fan pressurization method
- Air leakage testing results must be from testing that has, at least, been carried out after construction of the building or when structural changes have been made to the building.

Their expertise should be broad enough to cover all required technical aspects guaranteeing that the data collected during the test is appropriate and that the results reflect the actual airtightness performance of the building. It can be someone operating as sole trader or employed by public or private enterprise bodies.

## Evidence

1. Copy of results from building pressure and/or air leakage test.
2. Confirmation of competence levels for persons performing testing.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Air leakage test:** a test which quantifies the air permeability rate of the building envelope. The more airtight the building fabric is the lower the air permeability result will be. To maximise energy efficiency, it is advised that the air permeability result is as low as reasonably practicable.

**Relevant competent person:** An individual achieving all of the following can be considered to be a relevant competent person:

- a) Holds a recognised qualification in airtightness testing and measurement.
- b) Has relevant experience in air pressure testing at least ten large non-residential buildings within the last five years and a recognised qualification in airtightness testing and measurement.

## Asset Performance ENE 05 – Heating

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the main generation type for space heating?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Boiler
-	Heat pump/reversible chiller
-	Direct electricity consumption
-	Other onsite heat generation e.g., CHP/Solar thermal
-	Heat generated offsite e.g., district heating
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Where there is more than one heat source in the asset, the assessor must clarify and verify that the selected generation type is the main heat source for the asset.
2. If there is more than one boiler the assessor should base the efficiency figure on the average efficiency of the systems. This can be weighted based upon respective system capacities.
3. If there is more than one heat pump the assessor should base the COP figure on the average COP of the systems. This can be weighted based upon respective system capacities.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of listed space heating system.
2. Extract of O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information of heating systems that are present in the asset.
3. Where there is more than one heat source installed, photographic evidence that the selected generation type is the main heat source.

## Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 06 – Boiler efficiency

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

For boilers, other on-site, offsite, and other generation type heat sources please enter efficiency, if known.

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Boiler efficiency (%)

### Assessment criteria

1. If there is more than one boiler the assessor should base the efficiency figure on the average efficiency of the two systems. This can be weighted based upon respective system capacities.
2. The question need not be answered where any other heat generation type as listed in the question is in use in the asset.

### Evidence

1. Extract of manufacturer literature stating the boiler efficiency
2. Photographic evidence of installed boiler.

### Additional information

#### Other information

To assess a CHP unit using BREEAM In-Use, select the 'main generation type for space heating' as 'other on site e.g. CHP/solar thermal'. In order to account for the fact that the overall efficiency of the CHP system would not be recognised by entering the actual CHP thermal efficiency, the efficiency value to be entered should be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Overall efficiency} = \text{thermal efficiency} + (2 \times \text{electrical efficiency})$$

As an example, if the thermal efficiency was 50%, and the electrical efficiency 35%, then the calculated efficiency would be:

$$50\% + (2 \times 35\%) = 120\%$$

## Asset Performance ENE 07 – Heat pump efficiency

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

For **heat pump** generation type, please enter coefficient of performance (COP), if known.

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Heat pump coefficient of performance (COP)

### Assessment criteria

1. If there is more than one heat pump the assessor should base the COP figure on the average COP of the two systems. This can be weighted based upon respective system capacities.
2. The coefficient of performance (COP) of a heat pump is calculated as the ratio of heating or cooling provided to electrical energy consumed. COP entered must not be higher than 7.

### Evidence

1. Extract of O&M or copy of manufacturer information or other efficiency data from another valid source.
2. Visual inspection of installed heat pump(s) backed up by photographic evidence.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 08 – Fuel usage for heat generation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the main fuel used for heat generation?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Electric
-	Solid fossil fuel
-	Oil
-	Gas
-	Other

### Compliance requirement

1. The main fuel used for heat generation is the fuel type for the main source of heat generation, regardless of whether the source of heat generation is on site or off site.
2. If a building is connected to a district heating system, then it is the main fuel type for the district heating system that should be entered.
3. If the main fuel used for heat generation is biomass/biofuel, select 'Other'.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of the listed heat generating equipment.
2. Extract of O&M manual or copy of manufacturer information for relevant equipment.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 09 – Heat distribution

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the predominant medium by which heat is distributed around the asset?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	By air
-	By water
-	By refrigerant
-	Other
-	Local heating – no heat distribution system

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of listed system, indicating distribution method.
2. Extract of O&M manual or copy of manufacturer information indicating medium for heat distribution.
3. Installation diagrams.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Distribution medium:** For the purposes of this BREEAM In-Use issue, the distribution medium refers to the medium that is used to distribute the heat from the point at which it is generated, to the point at which it is required. Listed below are examples of typical media by which heat is distributed for specific heat distribution type:

- a) For a conventional gas boiler/radiator system, the medium will be water.

- b) For an air conditioned building, the medium may be air if hot/cold air ducted throughout building, or it may be refrigerant if external condensers are connected to indoor units.
- c) For heat pumps, the medium may be a refrigerant.

## Asset Performance ENE 10 – Heat emitter type

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the main heat emitter type?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Asset is not heated
-	Radiators
-	Fan coil units
-	Ducted warm air
-	Direct radiant heating
-	Underfloor heating
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of the listed equipment.
2. Extract of O&M manual.
3. Building schematics.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Main heat emitter type:** For the purposes of this BREEAM In-Use issue, the main heat emitter type is the main type through which heat is emitted in to the space/area for which heating is required.

Description of listed heat emitter types:

- a) Radiator is a device that warms a space by radiating heat by running a hot liquid through exposed elements (fins or pipes)
- b) Fan coil unit is a device consisting of a heating coil and fan used to warm a space
- c) Ducted warm air heating a space by providing hot air to it through ductwork
- d) Direct radiant heating warms a space by emitting heat from a warm element, such as a floor, wall or overhead panel, warming people and other objects in the space rather than heating the air.
- e) Underfloor heating is a form of central heating in which spaces are heated through the floor (either by directly warming people and objects or by heating the air in the space)

## Asset Performance ENE 11 – Mechanical and electrical heating equipment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

In what year was the main heat generator/heating system installed/replaced (if known)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	2006 +
-	2002 – 2005
-	1995 – 2001
-	1990 – 1994
-	1985 – 1989
-	1965 – 1984
-	1945 – 1964
-	1920 – 1945
-	Pre 1920

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Copy of documentation outlining when heat generator or heating system was installed or replaced, such as,
  - a) Extract of O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for heat generator/heating system
  - b) Service records

- c) Installation records
  - d) Maintenance records
2. Photographic evidence of heating system(s) if possible).

### **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance ENE 12 – Cooling system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the main system type for cooling?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Asset is not cooled
-	Localised (room) air conditioning unit
-	Chiller
-	Desiccant cooling system
-	Evaporative cooling
-	Ground cooling (air)
-	Ground cooling (water)
-	Sea/river/lake water cooling
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of relevant systems.
2. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

Descriptions of typical cooling systems are as follows:

- a) Localised (room) air conditioning unit: cooling is typically supplied stand-alone, all in one, (most commonly) wall mounted unit. This does not include temporary/mobile units or small split systems (where the system type selected should be chiller).
- b) Chiller: cooling is supplied via a system that uses a machine (chiller) that removes heat from a liquid via a vapour-compression or absorption refrigeration cycle. This liquid can then be circulated through a heat exchanger to cool air or equipment as required. These systems are typically (but not limited to):
  - i. an outdoor unit serving a split system
  - ii. a centralised chiller, typically roof mounted, or housed externally
- c) Desiccant cooling system: desiccant cooling relies on the moisture absorption properties of hygroscopic materials.
- d) Evaporative cooling: the evaporation of water is used to decrease the dry bulb temperature of air, Evaporative cooling can be direct (water evaporated directly into supply air stream), or indirect (secondary air stream is cooled directly and then exhausted).
- e) Ground cooling (air): cooling is provided by drawing outdoor air into the building via an underground duct system where the air exchanges heat with the ground.
- f) Ground cooling (water): cooling is provided by extracting ground water and passing through a heat exchanger before returning to the ground. Can be open loop or closed loop.
- g) Sea/river/lake water cooling: cooling is provided by pumping water from an open body of water by an open loop system with cooling extracted via a heat exchanger.

## Asset Performance ENE 13 – Efficiency of cooling generator

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Please enter the Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER) of the cooling generator, if known.

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Energy efficiency ratio (EER) of generator

### Assessment criteria

1. The EER of the cooling generator should not be larger than 7.

### Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information or other efficiency data from another valid source.
2. If there is more than one cooling generator the assessor should base the EER figure on the average EER of the two systems. This must be weighted based upon the capacity of the systems.

### Additional information

#### Other information

To assess CCHP/absorption chillers using BREEAM In-Use, select the 'main system type for cooling' as 'Chiller'. The energy efficiency ratio (EER) for cooling generator should then be calculated as follows:

$$EER = \text{rated absorption chiller COP} \times 2$$

As an example, if the absorption chiller COP was 0.7, then the calculated energy efficiency ratio to be entered into the tool would be:

$$0.7 \times 2 = 1.4$$

Where the calculated EER is below the minimum value that can be entered into the tool, please enter the minimum value. This correction is made to cancel out the primary energy factor normally applied for electrical chillers that would not be applicable in this instance.

**Please note:** absorption chillers are unlikely to score highly under the current methodology due in part to the use of the primary energy metric. The score will however be balanced to some degree by an improved score against the heating end use component where CCHP is used.

## Asset Performance ENE 14 – Cooling distribution

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the predominant medium by which cooling is distributed around the asset?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Local (room) cooling
-	By air
-	By water
-	By refrigerant
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
2. Photographic evidence of relevant systems.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Cooling distribution medium:** For the purposes of this BREEAM In-Use issue, the distribution medium refers to the medium that is used to distribute the 'coolth' from the point at which it is generated, to the point at which it is required.

Descriptions of typical cooling systems and the cooling medium are as follows:

- a) Chiller: by refrigerant
- b) Desiccant cooling system: typically by air
- c) Evaporative cooling: by air

- d) Ground cooling: either by air or water
- e) Sea/river/lake water cooling: typically by water

## Asset Performance ENE 15 – Air distributed cooling system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the system subtype for **air distributed** cooling systems?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Single duct constant volume
-	Single duct variable volume
-	Dual duct
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. This question **only** refers to assets that have air distributed cooling systems installed.

### Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
2. Photographic evidence of relevant systems.

### Additional information

#### Other information

Descriptions of typical air distributed cooling systems are as follows:

- a) Single duct constant volume systems maintain a constant air volume and vary the supply air temperature in response to space conditions.
- b) Single duct variable volume systems control the temperature in a space by varying the quantity of air supplied, rather than the supply air temperature.
- c) Dual duct systems use two separate ducts to circulate both cooled and heated air.

## Asset Performance ENE 16 – Refrigerant cooling system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the system subtype for **refrigerant** cooling systems?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Split system
-	Variable refrigerant flow (VRF) system
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
2. Photographic evidence of relevant systems.

### Additional Information

#### Relevant definitions

Descriptions of refrigerant cooling subtypes are as follows:

- a) Split system – This subtype utilises one external condensing unit/heat pump, which connects, via refrigerant pipework, to the indoor unit. These ‘master and slave’ type systems can serve multiple rooms which have similar heating/cooling loads. In these systems only one indoor unit is utilised as a master temperature control sensor. Split systems work with a limited number of indoor units.
- b) Variable refrigerant flow (VRF) system – This subtype again utilises one external condensing unit/heat pump, which is connected to several indoor units. However these systems allow versatility between heating /cooling loads and work independently of each other. VRF systems can work with many more units than split systems (e.g. up to 16 is fairly typical) and can provide simultaneous heating and cooling, and heat recovery.

## Asset Performance ENE 17 – Cooling emitter type

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the main cooling emitter type?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Air ducts
-	Radiators
-	Fan coil units
-	Direct radiant cooling, e.g. passive chilled beams
-	Fan assisted cooling, e.g. active chilled beams
-	Induction units
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. If more than one cooling emitter type is in use the selection must be that which distributes the most common cooling load within the building.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of installed cooling systems.
2. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
3. Installation diagrams.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Main emitter type:** For the purposes of this BREEAM In-Use issue, the main emitter type is the main type through which 'coolth' is emitted in to the space/area for which cooling is required.

Descriptions of emitter types are listed below:

- a) Air duct: a tube, canal, pipe, or similar through which coolth is delivered to a room.
- b) Radiator: a temperature-controlled surface that cools indoor temperatures by removing heat.
- c) Fan coil unit is a device consisting of a cooling coil and fan used to cool a space.
- d) Direct radiant cooling (e.g. passive chilled beam): a space is cooled through a temperature-controlled surface that cools indoor temperatures by removing sensible heat. There is no mechanical component to force the air through the system.
- e) Fan assisted cooling (e.g. active chilled beam): a space is cooled through the recirculation of cool air by a fan. This fan could be installed in combination with direct radiant cooling to increase its cooling capacity.
- f) Induction units: a space is cooled by a process in which induced room air is cooled by a water coil to the extent needed to control the room temperature.

## Asset Performance ENE 18 – Glazing

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What percentage of the external elevation is glazed?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Percentage of external elevation that is glazed (%)

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of building from all sides.
2. Building elevations

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 19 – Mechanical and electrical cooling equipment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

In what year was the main chiller/cooling system installed/replaced (if known)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	2006 +
-	2002 – 2005
-	1995 – 2001
-	1990 – 1994
-	1985 – 1989
-	1965 – 1984
-	1945 – 1964
-	1920 – 1945
-	Pre 1920

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for chiller/cooling system.
2. Service/maintenance records for the chiller/cooling system.
3. Visual inspection of equipment date (photographic evidence if possible).

## Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 20 – Specific fan power

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the specific fan power for air handling systems?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	5 – $WL^{-1}s^{-1}$
-	3 – $WL^{-1}s^{-1}$
-	1 – $WL^{-1}s^{-1}$
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. In this instance, air handling systems are systems (usually centralised) which distribute air (usually for cooling) around the building.

### Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 21 – Leakage tests

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What are the results of duct and air handling leakage tests?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Not applicable
-	No test
-	Class A result
-	Class B result
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

- Class A and Class B results for duct and air handling leakage tests are:

$$\text{Class A: } f = 0.027 \cdot p^{0.65}$$

$$\text{Class B: } f = 0.009 \cdot p^{0.65}$$

Where:

f = air leakage in l.s<sup>-1</sup>.m<sup>2</sup>

p = static pressure in Pa:

As referenced in:

EN 13779:2007 Ventilation for non-residential buildings. Performance requirements for ventilation and room-conditioning systems.

### Evidence

- Copy of duct and air handling leakage test results.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

The maximum score is awarded for Class A systems i.e. those with the lowest air leakage rates.

## Asset Performance ENE 22 – Mechanical and electrical ventilation equipment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

In what year was the main ventilation system installed/replaced (if known)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	2006 +
-	2002 – 2005
-	1995 – 2001
-	1990 – 1994
-	1985 – 1989
-	1965 – 1984
-	1945 – 1964
-	1920 – 1945
-	Pre 1920

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for ventilation system.
2. Service/maintenance records for the ventilation system.
3. Visual inspection of equipment date (photographic evidence if possible).

## Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 23 – Water heating

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What type of water heating is provided?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Point of use
-	Centralised
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. This question pertains to the predominant system which is used for hot water generation within the asset and does not include systems that are used to heat spaces.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of water heating systems.
2. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
3. Installation diagrams.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

Commonly used water heating types:

- a) Point of use: hot water is directly provided from a tap for drinking and cooking, i.e. via an instant hot water device.
- b) Centralised: hot water for drinking and cooking is provided centrally, i.e. through a boiler.

## Asset Performance ENE 24 – Water heating energy sources

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What energy source is used to heat water? If there is a mixture of centralised and point of use systems please select the energy source type of the centralised system.

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Electric
-	Solid fossil fuel
-	Oil
-	Gas
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. If there is a mixture of centralised and point of use systems, the energy source type of the centralised system should be selected.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of relevant system.
2. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
3. Installation maps.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

Some examples of water heating include (but are not limited to):

- a) Point of use, likely to be electric
- b) Boiler or water heater, likely to be gas or oil

## Asset Performance ENE 25 – High frequency ballast

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What percentage of fluorescent lamps has high frequency ballasts?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	There are no fluorescent lamps
-	0 to <50%
-	≥50% to <75%
-	≥75% to <100%
-	100%
-	Other

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of ballasts used for fluorescent lamps.
2. Copy of relevant manufacturer literature (if necessary).
3. Copy of building plans highlighting areas which use fluorescent lamps with high frequency ballasts.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**High frequency ballast** is delivered through a device that is designed to limit the current through the tube of a fluorescent lamp and to optimally operate a fluorescent lamp.

## Asset Performance ENE 26 – Internal lighting types

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Of all internal lamps, what percentage is of the type as listed below?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Percentage of Compact Fluorescent lighting (%)
-	Percentage of Tungsten Halogen lighting (%)
-	Percentage of Incandescent lamps lighting (%)
-	Percentage of T12 type lighting (%)
-	Percentage of T8 type lighting (%)
-	Percentage of T5 type lighting (%)
-	Percentage of LED type lighting (%) (with a special lighting control system)
-	Percentage of LED type lighting (%) (with a typical lighting control system)
-	Percentage of metal halide type lighting (%)

### Assessment criteria

1. For LED type lighting with a special lighting control system:

Special design lighting control systems allow the user to control all lighting within the asset from a central location. Other features include pre-set scene lighting levels for varying spaces, for example dimming levels etc. Special lighting systems include a variety of different control panels such as: integration to automated control systems and video controls. These lighting systems allow multiple zones to be created to allow for an improvement in energy efficiency.

2. For LED type lighting with a typical lighting control system:

Typical lighting control systems utilise stand-alone control within the space, whereby adjustment occurs only at the lighting location. Examples could include occupancy sensors and daylight sensors etc. Typical lighting systems include an on/off switch and can include dimming settings.

3. Valid responses for each lamp type questions are in percentage (%) values and must equal 100%.

## Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of visual inspection of lighting types used.
2. Copy of building plans highlighting areas which use the mentioned lighting types.

## Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 27 – Automatic lighting controls

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What percentage of the building floor area (not accessible to clients/customers) with access to daylight has fully functioning daylight sensors for lighting?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	0%
-	>0% to ≤25%
-	>25% to ≤50%
-	>50% to ≤75%
-	>75%

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of visual inspection of daylight sensors.
2. Copy of building plans highlighting areas which use daylight sensors for lighting.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 28 – Occupancy sensors

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What percentage of the building floor area (not accessible to client/customers) has fully functioning occupancy sensors for lighting?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Input calculated in Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	0%
-	>0% to ≤25%
-	>25% to ≤50%
-	>50% to ≤75%
-	>75%

### Assessment criteria

-

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of visual inspection of lighting sensors.
2. Copy of building plans highlighting areas which use occupancy sensors for lighting.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance ENE 29 – Legislation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

### Question

Has the asset been assessed against local energy performance standards?

### Aim

To ascertain whether the organisation has benchmarked their asset performance against a local energy standard.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
3	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- For assessments inside the European Union (EU), local energy performance standards must be derived from national policy framework which exists to facilitate the EU 'Directive on the energy performance of buildings (EPBD)'.
- For assessments outside of the EU, energy performance standards must be derived from relevant national policy framework.

### Evidence

- Copy of certificate which illustrates that the asset has been certified against the relevant local/national energy performance standards.

### Additional information

#### Other information

This question does not feed in to the energy model.

## Asset Performance ENE 30 – Onsite renewables

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
5	No

### Question

What percentage of the total energy consumption is offset by onsite renewables and community renewable schemes?

### Aim

To understand if renewable energy technologies are being used on site and how much these offset energy requirements for the site.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	There is no onsite or community renewable energy generation
1	≥0<5%
2	≥5% to <10%
3	≥10% to <15%
4	≥15% to <20%
5	≥20%

### Assessment criteria

1. Calculating energy offset should be done by the following formula (all figures for energy should be converted to kWh prior to calculation):

$$\frac{Er}{E} \times 100 = Eo$$

*E* = Total energy used onsite per annum

*Er* = Energy produced from renewable technologies on site per annum

*Eo* = Offset energy

2. All renewable energy generation should be sub-metered. This metered data would then be used to calculate the proportion of renewable energy generated (in kWh).
3. Renewable energy produced on site needs to be used directly, fed into the grid and/or stored for later use.

4. For the purposes of BREEAM In-Use International, technologies eligible to contribute to achieving the requirements of this issue must produce energy from renewable sources as defined by Directive 2009/28/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 23 April 2009 on the promotion of the use of energy from renewable sources and amending and subsequently repealing Directives 2001/77/EC and 2003/30/EC ([www.eur-lex.europa.eu](http://www.eur-lex.europa.eu)). All other ancillary requirements set out in the EU Directive also apply.

The following requirements must also be met:

- a) There must be a Private wire arrangement for the supply of energy produced to the building under assessment.
- b) Where the country of assessment has an independent national certification scheme for installers of small scale renewable energy or Combined Heat and Power systems, these technologies must be certified in accordance with the national scheme.
- c) The accreditation scheme must align with the Directives listed above, or an equivalent country/regional directive or standard.
- d) Air source heat pumps can only be considered as a renewable technology when used in heating mode. Refer to Annex VII of Directive 2009/28/EC for more detail on accounting of energy from heat pumps.

Where independent accreditation schemes do not exist in the country the design team must demonstrate they have investigated the competence of the installer selected to install the LZC technology and that they are confident the installers have the skill and competence to install the technology appropriately.

Other systems may be acceptable as part of a LZC strategy under this issue but are not inherently considered as LZC technologies. Acceptability will be dependent on the nature of the system proposed and the carbon benefits achieved. The BREEAM Assessor must confirm acceptability with BRE if in doubt.

5. Simply signing up to a green tariff is **NOT** considered to be an acceptable means of demonstrating compliance with the criteria.

## Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of onsite renewable energy sources or community renewable energy schemes
2. Yearly energy bills
3. Yearly metering data
4. Data sources created through amalgamation of energy bills or metering data (Excel Spread sheets for example)
5. Renewable energy tariffs are **NOT** acceptable as evidence

## Additional information

### Other information

This question does not feed into the energy model.

# Transport

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
TRA 01	Cyclist facilities	4
TRA 02	Proximity to public transport	8
TRA 03	Proximity to amenities	4
TRA 04	Pedestrian and cyclist safety	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>18</b>

## Asset Performance TRA 01 – Cyclist facilities

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What provisions are available to cyclists?

### Aim

To encourage building users to cycle by ensuring adequate provision of cyclist facilities.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Well-lit secure cycle racks are in place
2	Well-lit secure cycle racks and gender specific changing facilities or individual cubicles (including lockers) in place
3	Well-lit secure cycle racks, gender specific changing facilities or individual cubicles, and shower facilities (including lockers) in place
4	Well-lit secure cycle racks, gender specific changing facilities or individual cubicles, and shower facilities (including lockers), and a ventilated drying area to hang wet clothes in a sheltered space
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Compliant cycle storage facilities must be provided for a percentage of staff in accordance with the following figures:

- a) 10% of staff numbers for organisations with up to 500 staff PLUS
- b) 7% of staff numbers for organisations with 501 – 1000 staff PLUS
- c) 5% of staff numbers for organisations with over 1000 staff

For assets where the majority of building users are not staff, e.g. retail centres, the above requirements apply to staff only. In addition the following must be provided for visitors:

- a) 5% of the total number of customer car parking spaces (excluding disabled spaces and mother-and-baby spaces where provided). This is subject to providing a minimum of 10 cycle racks. Any asset that provides at least 50 customer cycle storage spaces will comply

regardless of the number of parking spaces. The staff spaces must be provided in addition to customer spaces and whilst they do not need to be separate from customer spaces, this is encouraged.

## 2. **Cycle rack requirements:**

- a) Fixtures to lock bikes are not required for locked sheds.
- b) The majority of racks are within 100m of the building entrance.

## 3. **Lockers:**

The number of lockers is at least equal to the number of cycle spaces provided, and these should be accessible by both male and female users. For assets where the majority of building users are not staff, e.g. retail centres, this requirement applies to staff only.

## 4. **Shower requirements:**

- a) One shower is provided for every 10 cycle storage racks and both male and female users catered for.
- b) These are available for others to use in addition to cyclists.

For assets where the majority of building users are not staff, e.g. retail centres, this requirement applies to staff only.

## 5. **Drying space:**

Should be a specially designed and designated space (a plant room does not comply) and heating/ventilation should be adequate. For assets where the majority of building users are not staff, e.g. retail centres, this requirement applies to staff only.

## 6. **Proximity to public transport:**

For sites where at least 50% of the available credits for BREEAM In-Use issue Tra 02 Proximity to public transport have been awarded (rounded to the nearest whole credit), the number of compliant cycle spaces can be reduced by 50%. This reduction will also reduce the requirement for compliant shower/lockers by the same margin.

## 7. **Public bicycle sharing systems:**

Bicycle sharing systems are increasingly popular and diverse systems have appeared over the past few years in major cities whereby a number of bicycles are made available for shared use amongst people who do not own a bicycle. The central concept of many of the systems is free or affordable access to bicycles for city transport in order to reduce the use of automobiles for short trips inside the city thereby diminishing traffic congestion, noise and air-pollution.

Up to 50% of the BREEAM cycle racks requirement may be provided by a public bicycle sharing system where it complies with the following:

- a) The program is implemented by the municipality or through a public-private partnership.
- b) The system must be open to casual users who wish to use them for one-way rides to work, education or shopping centres.
- c) Bicycles are available at unattended urban locations; and they operate in a manner that could be seen as 'bicycle transit'.
- d) Service terminals must be available throughout the city.
- e) The average distance between service terminals is 500m maximum in inner city areas.
- f) A service terminal is available within 500m of the main building entrance.

- g) The station terminals do not need to comply with the design requirements listed above.

The number of compliant facilities is calculated based on the total number of cycle racks required. For retail projects, public bicycle racks can also count towards the number of customer cycle racks required (i.e. whereas the total number of cycle racks may be reduced by 50%, the number of compliant facilities may not be reduced).

## Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of (where applicable):
  - a) cycle racks
  - b) showers
  - c) lockers
  - d) changing facilities
  - e) drying space

## Additional information

### Other information

If the number of cycling facilities that should be supplied is not a whole number, it must be rounded up to the nearest whole number. For example, where the number of cycling facilities that should be provided is calculated to be 10.2, the actual number of facilities that must be provided is 11.

## Asset Performance TRA 02 – Proximity to public transport

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
8	No

### Question

Is the asset within walking distance of public transport networks which operate a frequent service?

### Aim

To ensure appropriate public transport provision is available to building occupants.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	Public transport network over 1km away from the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
2	Public transport network over 1km away from the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
3	Public transport network within 1km of the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
4	A chartered bus service is provided at the beginning and end of the working day
4	Public transport network within 500m of the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
6	Public transport network within 1km of the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
8	Public transport network within 500m of the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
0	No public transport network in place that meets the above criteria
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. The distance must be measured via safe pedestrian routes; such as pavements and safe crossing points, or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points. The distance should **NOT** be measured in a straight line.

## Evidence

1. Annotated map demonstrating the route and distance to public transport nodes.
2. Photographic evidence public transport networks and safe pedestrian route(s).
3. Copies of public transport network timetables.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Safe pedestrian routes** include, but are not limited to: pavements and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points.

## Asset Performance TRA 03 – Proximity to amenities

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is the asset within walking distance of amenities?

### Aim

To ensure appropriate amenities are available to building occupants.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	A sandwich bar/cafe within 1km of the building via a safe pedestrian route
2	A sandwich bar/cafe within 500m of the building via a safe pedestrian route
2	A sandwich bar/cafe and bank/cash machine or postal facilities or post box within 1km of the building via a safe pedestrian route
4	A sandwich bar/cafe and bank/cash machine or postal facilities or post box within 500m of the building via a safe pedestrian route
0	None of the above
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

- All amenities listed must be open during employee working hours.

### Evidence

- Where amenities listed are external to the asset:
  - Annotated map demonstrating the route and distance to amenities listed by the client.
  - Photographic evidence of listed amenities and safe pedestrian route(s).
- Where amenities listed are contained within the asset:
  - Asset floor plans with location of amenities indicated.
  - Photographic evidence of listed amenities and safe pedestrian route(s).

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Safe pedestrian routes** include, but are not limited to: pavements and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points.

## Asset Performance TRA 04 – Pedestrian and cyclist safety

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are service delivery access points, routes, and manoeuvring areas onsite independent from parking areas, pedestrian, and cyclist access points and routes?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the provision of safe and secure pedestrian and cycle access routes.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. If the building does not have any external areas and internal access is directly from the public highway/footpath, then the building assessed is compliant.

### Evidence

1. Copy of site map indicating location of service delivery areas in relation to other areas to indicate that these are separate.
2. Photographic evidence of the service delivery areas and safe pedestrian route(s)

### Additional information

#### Other information

**Safe pedestrian routes** include, but are not limited to: pavements and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points.

# Water

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
WAT 01	Water meter	6
WAT 02	Water efficient equipment: WCs	4
WAT 03	Water efficient equipment: urinals	4
WAT 04	Water efficient equipment: hand washing basins	4
WAT 05	Water efficient equipment: showers	4
WAT 06	Water efficient equipment: white goods	4
WAT 07	Leak prevention	4
WAT 08	Leak detection system	4
WAT 09	Isolation valves	4
WAT 10	Reducing mains water consumption	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>40</b>

## Asset Performance WAT 01 – Water meter

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
6	No

### Question

To what level is water consumption metered?

### Aim

To ensure water consumption can be monitored and therefore enable building users to target reductions in water consumption.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Not metered
2	Site – Where water consumption is metered for the whole site
4	Building – Where water consumption is metered at the whole building level
6	All water-consuming plant or building areas that consume 10% or more of the building's total water demand are either fitted with sub meters or have water monitoring equipment integral to the plant or area AND Where the building is multi tenanted: water consumption is metered per tenanted area
6	No water supply to the building
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. A water meter on the mains supply to the site or building (whichever is applicable) including where water is supplied via a borehole or other private source.
2. Evidence provided demonstrates that a water meter is installed on relevant water supplies to the specific response given in the credit criteria.
3. Each water meter has the ability to have instantaneous reading (e.g. has a pulsed output) and enables connection to a Building Management System (BMS) for the monitoring of water consumption.
4. Where water is metered and monitored at site level, the water meters must measure all water that is utilised on site, including, but not limited to:

- a) Mains supply
  - b) Bore hole supply
  - c) Rainwater harvesting
  - d) Grey water harvesting
5. If there is no water supply to the building, the assessor must validate this.

## **Evidence**

1. Copies of site/building/asset plans, indicating where water meters are located.
2. Photographic evidence of installed water meters.
3. Copy of most current water meter readings to confirm that all meters are working.

## **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance WAT 02 – Water efficient equipment: WCs

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of WCs has been fitted with low flush technologies?

### Aim

To reduce water consumption by encouraging the specification of water efficient WCs.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	All WCs $\leq 6$ litres per flush
2	$\geq 75\%$ of WCs $\leq 4.5$ litres per flush (all remaining WCs $\leq 6$ litres per flush)
3	All WCs $\leq 4.5$ litres per flush
4	$\geq 50\%$ of WCs $\leq 3$ litres per flush (all remaining WCs $\leq 4.5$ litres per flush)

### Assessment criteria

1. An adequate proportion of WCs within the asset need to be checked by the assessor. It is not necessary to check all WCs. At least 10% of WCs within the building should be observed.
2. For dual flush WCs the effective flush volume will need to be calculated, an explanation and worked example is available in the additional information section.

### Evidence

1. Manufacturer/supplier literature of installed WCs (if available).
2. Photographic evidence of low flush WCs.
3. Copies of asset floor plans indicating the location and quantity of WCs.
4. If manufacturer information is unavailable:
  - a) Photographic evidence of information on cistern to identify flow rate.
  - b) Copy of liaisons with manufacturer confirming WC is low flush.
  - c) Assessor comment to justify the reason why the WC is deemed to be low flush.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Effective flush volume** (EFV) is the volume of water needed to clear the WC and transport any contents far enough to avoid blocking the drain. The effective flush volume of a single flush WC is the volume of water used for one flush.

The effective flush volume of a **dual flush WC** is the ratio of full flush to reduced flush. This is taken to be one full flush for every three reduced flushes for non-domestic buildings.

The effective flush volume would therefore be calculated as follows, using a 6/4 litre dual flush volume WC as an example:

$$\frac{(6L \times 1) + (4L \times 3)}{4} = 4.5L \text{ EFV}$$

## Asset Performance WAT 03 – Water efficient equipment: urinals

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Does the asset contain low water use or waterless urinals?

### Aim

To reduce water consumption.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Timed flush urinals with less than or equal to 3 litres per flush
2	Timed flush urinals with less than or equal to 1.2 litres per flush
2	PIR controlled flush urinals with less than or equal to 3 litres per flush
3	PIR controlled flush urinals with less than or equal to 1.2 litres per flush
4	Waterless urinals
4	There are no urinals present in the asset

### Assessment criteria

- Where multiple fittings are specified with various flow rates, the flow rates for each type of fitting will need to be calculated and the average flow rate determined by the assessor.
- Water consumption figures will need to be derived from the manufacturer's product information to determine the consumption of the urinals as follows:
  - Urinals: Flush volume in litres/use for single use flush urinals.
  - Cistern fed systems: The flushing frequency/hour and cistern capacity in litres.
- If manufacturer information is unavailable it should be possible to tell whether urinals are waterless, however assessor should provide the manufacturer and model number with photographic evidence if this is the case within the assessor comments section of the assessment.

4. If there are no urinals within the asset, the assessor must verify that this is due to one of the following reasons:
  - a) The asset is female access only (for example, a girl only school)
  - b) The asset contains unisex toilets only

## **Evidence**

1. An adequate proportion of urinals within the asset need to be checked by the assessor to determine whether they are low flush / waterless, although it is not necessary to check them all. At least 10% of urinals within the building should be observed.
2. Photographic evidence of installed urinals.
3. Manufacturer/supplier literature of installed urinals (if available).
4. Copies of asset floor plans indicating the location and quantity of urinals highlighting which urinals are waterless.

## **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance WAT 04 – Water efficient equipment: hand washing basins

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of the hand washing basin taps is designed for low water use?

### Aim

To reduce water consumption by encouraging specification of water efficient equipment.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≥1 to <25%
2	≥25 to <50%
3	≥50 to <75%
4	≥75%

### Assessment criteria

1. Hand washing basin taps must have a maximum flow rate that is less than 6.0 litres/min.
2. Hand washing basin must have automatic control (e.g. push button with an auto shutoff or Active Infrared Taps).

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of installed hand washing basins.
2. Manufacturer/supplier literature of water efficient specifications.
3. Copies asset floor plans identifying the location and quantity of hand wash basins.
4. An adequate proportion of wash basins within the asset must be checked by the assessor. It is not necessary to check all taps. At least the following percentage of hand washing basins within the asset must be observed and confirmed to meet the credit criteria:
  - a) ≥1 to <25 – 5%
  - b) ≥25 to <50 – 10%

- c)  $\geq 50$  to  $< 75$  – 15%
  - d)  $> 75$  – 20%
5. Manufacturer documentation should be provided for the wash basin taps which have been installed and observed within the building in order to confirm that they are low water use.
  6. Where manufacturer information is not available, evidence must be provided that confirms that the taps meet the stated criteria. This could include measured flow rates or confirmation from the manufacturer that the installed taps meet the criteria.

## Additional information

### Other information

Only taps that are specifically used in hand washing basins are applicable. This requirement does not apply to:

- a) 'Scrub' facilities in clinical areas of healthcare buildings
- b) Taps provided to cleaners
- c) Kitchen and external taps
- d) Other instances where such fittings would be inappropriate for medical/health-related reasons (such instances must be justified by the design the building management)

Types of low water use hand washing basin taps include, but are not limited to:

- a) Spray taps
- b) Aerated taps
- c) Press or push button taps with an auto-shutoff
- d) Taps with user sensors such as Active Infra-Red taps

## Asset Performance WAT 05 – Water efficient equipment: showers

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of the showers is low water use?

### Aim

To reduce water consumption associated with the use of showers.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0
1	≥1 to <25%
2	≥25 to <50%
3	≥50 to <75%
4	≥75%
4	No showers in place

### Assessment criteria

1. In order to be awarded the relevant credits showers must have a maximum flow rate less than 6 litres per minute.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of installed showers.
2. Manufacturer/supplier literature of water efficient specifications.
3. Copies of asset floor plans demonstrating location of changing facilities.
4. Manufacturer documentation should be provided for the showers which have been installed and observed within the building in order to confirm that they are low water use.
5. Where manufacturer information is not available, evidence must be provided that confirms that the showers meet the stated criteria. This could include measured flow rates or confirmation from the manufacturer that the installed taps meet the criteria.

## Additional information

### Other information

An adequate proportion of showers within the asset need to be checked by the assessor, although it is not necessary to check them all. At least the following percentage of showers within the asset should be observed regarding credit criteria:

- a)  $\geq 1$  to  $< 25$  – 5%
- b)  $\geq 25$  to  $< 50$  – 10%
- c)  $\geq 50$  to  $< 75$  – 15%
- d)  $> 75$  – 20%

## Asset Performance WAT 06 – Water efficient equipment: white goods

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of the water consuming white goods are low water use (dishwashers, washing machines)?

### Aim

To reduce water consumption associated with the use of white goods.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≥1% to <25%
2	≥25% to <50%
3	≥50% to <75%
4	≥75%
4	No water consuming white goods in place

### Assessment criteria

- In order to be awarded the relevant credits, baseline water usage of installed equipment must be equal to or below the figures as outlined in Table 12.

Table 12: Water consumption baseline levels for white goods

Component	Baseline
Commercial sized dishwasher	7 litres per rack
Domestic sized dishwasher (if applicable)	13 litres per cycle
Commercial/industrial sized washing machine	12 litres per kg
Domestic sized washing machine (if applicable)	60 litres per load

2. Only water consuming white goods that are under the operational control of the building owner and/or are fitted by the building owner must be assessed.

## **Evidence**

1. Photographic evidence of listed white goods.
2. Manufacturer specifications of white goods installed in the asset.
3. Copies of asset floor plans with marked location of white goods installed.

## **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance WAT 07 – Leak detection system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Does the asset have an automated leak detection system?

### Aim

To reduce the impact of water leaks that may otherwise go undetected.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. A leak detection system detects higher than normal flow rates at meters and/or sub-meters. It does not necessarily require a system that directly detects water leakage along part or the whole length of the water supply system. The system can be flow based or sensor based.
2. The leak detection system should be:
  - a) Able to easily identify any detected leaks
  - b) Activated when a continuous flow of water passes through the water meter at a flow rate above a pre-set minimum for a pre-set period of time
3. The system does not need to cut off the water supply when the alarm is triggered.
4. Where there is a water supply company meter at the site/building boundary, it may be necessary to install a separate flow meter (or alternative measurement system) just after the water supply company meter to detect leaks. However, if the water supply company agrees to some form of leak detection being installed on their meter, this would also be acceptable.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of leak detection system.
2. Manufacturer specifications of system.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance WAT 08 – Leak prevention

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are toilet areas fitted with controls that isolate water supply when they are unoccupied?

### Aim

To reduce the impact of water leaks in areas that are not occupied that may otherwise go undetected.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Shut off systems may control combined toilet areas (for example the male and female toilets within a core) provided that the source of the leak within that area can be isolated once the building is occupied (i.e. the facilities management team are able to pin point the position of the leak whether it is in the male or female toilets).
2. Proximity detection shut off is not required for each individual toilet, but the requirement is for the cold water supply to be isolated for each toilet block on a floor.
3. The requirements of this credit apply to facilities with a single WC (potentially within smaller or low occupancy buildings). In these instances shut-off can be provided via the same switch that controls lighting (whether proximity detection or a manual switch). Programmable timed controllers linked to the shut-off device are an acceptable means of compliance for facilities in this type of space, where constant use is to be expected during operating hours.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of water shut off controls.
2. Manufacturer specifications of shut off controls (if available).
3. Systematic diagram showing the areas of isolation.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance WAT 09 – Isolation valves

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of water using appliances have isolation valves fitted?

### Aim

To minimise unnecessary water consumption due to defects and to minimise disruption during maintenance.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≥1% to <25%
2	≥25% to <50%
3	≥50% to <75%
4	≥75%

### Assessment criteria

- Evidence illustrates that isolation valves are installed for relevant equipment within the asset. Relevant equipment includes (but is not limited to):
  - Wash basin
  - Shower
  - WC
  - Urinal
  - Washing machine
  - Dishwasher
- If isolation valves are fitted to areas in which water using appliances are installed, such as shower blocks and WC areas, the aim of the credit would be met. These areas can be included in the overall percentage.
- Isolation valves are classified as any valve in the pipe which prevents the flow of water to a specific appliance; for example WCs.

4. Isolation valves must be easily accessible.

## **Evidence**

1. Photographic evidence of water isolation controls.
2. Manufacturer specifications of isolation controls (if available).

## **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance WAT 10 – Reducing mains water consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Does the asset use non-mains water supply for any use?

### Aim

To reduce the demand for mains water within the asset.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Legislative requirements prevent use of non-mains water supply within the asset
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Both potable and non-potable water obtained from non-mains sources count towards the credit criteria. Sources might include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Grey water
  - b) Rain water
  - c) Borehole

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of non-mains water source.
2. Manufacturer information.
3. Where legislative requirements prevent the use of non-mains water supply, copy of relevant legislation.

### Additional information

-

# Materials

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAT 01	Condition survey	4
MAT 02	Security advice	4
MAT 03	Intruder alarm system	4
MAT 04	Alarm system monitoring	4
MAT 05	Natural hazards	4
MAT 06	Future adaptation	4
MAT 07	Designing for robustness	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>26</b>

## Asset Performance MAT 01 – Condition survey

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

If a condition survey has been completed within the last 5 years, has work been conducted to rectify any issues/defects identified?

### Aim

To encourage asset/property owners to understand the physical condition of their property, and manage any deficiencies to structural, mechanical, electrical, plumbing, fire protection, communications and life safety systems.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Asset is over 5 years old and a condition survey has not been carried out within the last 5 years
0	A condition survey has been carried out, however no works have been carried out to rectify issues/defects identified
1	A condition survey has been carried out and an action plan is in place which establishes when issues will be rectified
2	A condition survey has been carried out and all major issues/defects have been rectified
3	A condition survey has been carried out and all major issues/defects have been rectified and an action plan confirms when the remaining issues will be rectified
4	A condition survey has been carried out and all identified issues/defects have been rectified
4	The asset is less than 5 years old and no condition survey has been undertaken
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. A condition survey should be conducted by a competent person and assess the condition of the asset, in terms of the main building elements; both external/internal fabric and equipment.
2. A condition survey typically includes (but is not limited to):

- a) Structural condition
  - b) Condition of mechanical components
  - c) Condition of electrical components
  - d) Condition of plumbing
  - e) Fire protection
  - f) Communications and life safety systems
  - g) Health and Safety conditions and environmental conditions; including, but not limited to:
    - i. Damp
    - ii. Cold
    - iii. Draughts
    - iv. Acoustic and noise penetration
    - v. Ventilation
    - vi. Daylight
3. Criteria for repairing or renewing defective elements should be established to ensure work prioritisation.

## Evidence

1. Records of previous condition surveys.
2. Copy of action plan.
3. Photographic and/or documentation to demonstrate the address of defects.
4. Assets that are less than 5 years old will require appropriate public records of property registration to demonstrate the building's age.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Competent person:** a person that is trained and qualified to conduct condition surveys in accordance with legislative requirements.

**Major issues** are issues that need to be addressed in order for the building to operate and function correctly.

**Minor issues** are issues that can be addressed at a later stage as these do not directly adversely affect the operation of the building.

## Asset Performance MAT 02 – Security advice

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

How were security measures for the building and its content decided upon?

### Aim

To ensure all property related security issues are identified by a suitable third party organisation and addressed in order to reduce risks from crime.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No security measures in place (other than locks for doors)
1	A competent third party organisation was consulted to identify security issues and minor issues have been addressed in accordance to the suggested actions
2	A competent third party organisation was consulted to identify security issues and all major issues have been addressed in accordance to the suggested actions
4	A competent third party organisation was consulted to identify security issues and all identified issues/defects have been rectified
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. A consultation involving a competent third party organisation has been carried out to identify potential weaknesses of property perimeters and building interiors.
2. A competent third party organisation is an organisation that has detailed knowledge of the security industry of the country in which the asset is located, with regards to apparatus and strategies that an organisation might use to enhance the security of their asset. This includes knowing what is appropriate and why it is technically beneficial.
3. Issues raised by consultation are addressed in accordance with report recommendations.

### Evidence

1. Copy of the report and actions raised from the survey by a suitably qualified third party organisation.
2. Photographic evidence and/or documentation to demonstrate the rectification of issues/defects.

## Additional information

-

## Asset Performance MAT 03 – Intruder alarm system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Has the asset been fitted with an intruder alarm system that is certified to National or International standard or is the asset manned by a security guard 24 hours a day?

### Aim

To ensure the asset is equipped with appropriate security systems to prevent any damage to the asset.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. If devices are installed a security grading should have been conducted to determine design requirements.
2. 24 hour guard security should be undertaken by trained staff either employed by the organisation or contracted to look after the site.

### Evidence

1. Assets that have intruder alarms will require:
  - a) Documentation demonstrating intruder alarm system is approved to an appropriate National or International standard.
  - b) Photographic evidence of the intruder alarm system.
2. Assets that have 24 hour guard security will require:
  - a) Company details and contract agreement of the organisation providing security.

### Additional information

#### Other information

A security grading is given to an alarm system by a certification body. This might be useful as a particular alarm grading might be needed in order to qualify for insurance coverage on a business

premises. This will be dependent on the nature of the risk which is being protected regarding the asset.

## Asset Performance MAT 04 – Alarm system monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are the alarm systems (fire, intruder) connected to a monitored facility that is operational 24 hours a day?

### Aim

To ensure an asset has appropriate response to a fire and break in when the building is unoccupied.

### Credits available

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Alarm receiving centres (ARC) should be staffed at all times.
2. Emergency response procedures should be in place with contractors and emergency services to enable the ARC monitoring function to be maintained whilst the emergency incident is investigated.

### Evidence

1. Documentation confirming the asset alarm systems are connected to a monitored facility.
2. Relevant contractual documents with the monitoring facility.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance MAT 05 – Natural hazards

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Have emergency plans been developed to deal with threats from all relevant natural hazards?

### Aim

To ensure the asset is protected against the potential impacts of natural hazards.

### Credits available

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	No, asset is in an area where no risks exist

### Assessment criteria

- The emergency plan includes a coherent emergency strategy for all **relevant** natural hazards for the time period specified.
- Relevant natural hazard risks/plans should have been identified by competent individuals/relevant organisations.
- Natural hazards are natural processes or phenomena occurring in the biosphere or crust that may constitute a damaging event. The list below is not intended to be exhaustive, but provides an indication of the type of hazards that should be considered to meet the definition. Other natural hazards may be relevant under this issue. Relevance will be dependent on local geography, geology, hydrology and climate factors and the assessor should be satisfied that appropriate local expertise has been sought by the client/design team to identify these fully:
  - Floods (addressed in Asset Performance POL 02 – Flood risk assessment)
  - Natural disasters of geological origin such as volcanic eruptions, earthquakes and landslides
  - Natural disasters of climatic or meteorological origin such as droughts, avalanches, wave surges including tsunamis and tidal waves, and wind storms including cyclones, hurricanes, tornadoes, tropical storms, and typhoons
  - Wildfires
- Emergency plans have been delegated to relevant individuals within the organisation.
- If there is no perceived threat from natural hazards this should be outlined in appropriate documentation from a relevant authority or expert.

## Evidence

1. Copy of relevant natural hazard emergency plans.
2. For assets that list no natural hazard risk exists:
  - a) Documented confirmation from relevant agency/experts that the asset is located in an area of no risk.

## Additional information

### Other information

The metric used to describe risk from a natural hazard is the return period or recurrence interval, a ratio which describes the time elapsed between incidences of the natural hazard in question. This metric is used as a rough estimate and will not predict the actual time period between natural hazards and is calculated using historical data.

## Asset Performance MAT 06 – Future adaptation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Does the design of the asset allow future adaptation to meet changing demands such as variations in use and functionality?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage buildings which have been built to allow a degree of flexibility for future usage.

### Credits available

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- The building should have been designed with a degree of flexibility to ensure that future changes in use are possible. This flexibility could consist of (but is not limited to):
  - Partition walls which can be easily re-positioned.
  - Circuitry/plumbing which can be easily removed/adapted when areas are unoccupied or when there is increased usage required; for example lighting removal or addition etc.
  - Other design features deemed suitable by the assessor.

### Evidence

- Photographic evidence of (internal) design features that allow for flexibility as stated or deemed relevant by the assessor.
- Plans, studies, reports or other documentation that reflect that functional adaptability was taken into consideration during the design process.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance MAT 07 – Designing for robustness

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Does the asset contain features that protect exposed elements of the building and landscaping from damage from pedestrian traffic, internal vehicular/trolley movement, and external vehicular collision?

### Aim

To minimise the frequency of building part replacement, maximising materials optimisation.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Examples of features that protect exposed elements of the building include, but are not limited to:
  - a) Asset walls separated from vehicular traffic by a path or barrier
  - b) Wall/corner guards
  - c) Bollards
2. Examples of features that protect exposed elements of landscaping include, but are not limited to:
  - a) Pathways which are easily accessible and dissuade building users to walk across landscaped areas
  - b) Landscaped areas are fenced off

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of asset protection infrastructure listed by the client.
2. Plans, studies, reports or other documentation that reflect that robustness was taken into consideration during the design process.

### Additional information

-

# Waste

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
WST 01	Storage of operational waste	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>4</b>

## Asset Performance WST 01 – Storage of operational waste

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is waste collected and separated at a central location?

### Aim

To ensure assets have adequate space for waste stream separation on site, allowing for recycling to take place and thus reduce waste being sent to landfill or for incineration.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Sufficient space to separate 1 waste stream
2	Sufficient space to separate 2 waste stream or, where waste is collected commingled, separated in 2 waste streams off-site
3	Sufficient space to separate 3 waste stream or, where waste is collected commingled, separated in 3 waste streams off-site
4	Sufficient space to separate 4 or more waste streams or, where waste is collected commingled, separated in 4 waste streams off-site
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

- Separate bins should be provided for different waste streams (if this is necessary), examples of these include (but are not limited to):
  - Glass
  - Paper
  - Aluminium cans
  - Plastic
  - Other
- Different coloured glass separation is classed as one waste stream.
- If recyclables are stored or collected in the same container (commingled), the assessor must verify that the waste collector separates the commingled waste in the identified waste streams.

4. Bins located in this central area should:
  - a) Be grouped together
  - b) Be easily identifiable in terms of the waste streams they hold
5. Bins should be in an appropriate location, easily accessible to those responsible for disposing of waste.

## **Evidence**

1. Photographic evidence of the central storage space.
2. If waste is commingled, records from waste collector that commingled waste is separated in the waste streams as identified.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

Commingled recycling allows for mixed recyclables to be disposed of in one receptacle. Recyclable materials including glass, plastics, cardboard, paper, metals and aluminium cans and containers make up co-mingled recycling.

# Land Use and Ecology

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
LE 01	Planted area	4
LE 02	Ecological features of planted area	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>6</b>

## Asset Performance LE 01 – Planted area

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of the asset's footprint has been planted?

### Aim

To measure and encourage planted areas within the asset's footprint that enhance the asset's site ecology.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≤10%
2	>10% to ≤40%
3	>40% to ≤70%
4	>70% to 100%
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Planted area can contain or be a mix of horizontal and vertical planting.
2. Vertical habitats or green walls can be:
  - a) Free standing or part of the building, as long as these are located within the asset's footprint.
  - b) Partially or completely covered with vegetation and, in some cases, soil or an inorganic growing medium.

### Evidence

1. Visual inspection of ecological structures.
2. Photographic evidence of installed ecological structures.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Green roof:** A green roof is a roof that is partially or completely covered with vegetation and soil or another growing medium, situated on top of a waterproof membrane. These systems can be either intensive or extensive.

- a) Intensive Green roof systems have a deep growing medium, which allow the establishment of trees and shrubs. The depth of the growing medium requires extra loading requirements within the holding structure and requires a complex irrigation system for maintenance.
- b) Extensive green roof systems have a thin growing medium and require minimal maintenance, and in general do not require irrigation.

**Brown roof:** A brown roof allows local plant species to populate the roof over time. Brown roofs are crafted primarily to remote brownfield conditions through the use of by-products of developments: Brick rubble, crushed concrete, and subsoils. Such designs are naturally colonised by vegetation, non-vegetated loose substrates also provide habitat for a range of invertebrates and birds.

## Asset Performance LE 02 – Ecological features of planted area

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What ecological features have been planted/installed in the planted area(s) of the asset's footprint?

### Aim

To measure and recognise ecological features that have been installed in the planted areas of the asset's footprint in order to improve the ecological value of the site.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
0	Question not answered	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Don't know	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	No	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Planters (containing living plants) outside	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Traditional planted areas, such as planting in car parks and planting around the asset	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Other planted areas, such as green roofs and green walls	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Features to assist local fauna	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

- Native floral species or those with a known attraction or benefit to local wildlife can be considered for the purpose of enhancing the ecological value.
- Features to assist local fauna include (but are not limited to):
  - Bird boxes
  - Bat boxes
  - Insect boxes

**Note:** Assessors must verify that these features are installed and maintained correctly.
- Planted areas must be of a viable size to support the flora and fauna within them.

## Evidence

1. Visual inspection of ecological structures.
2. Photographic evidence of installed ecological structures.

## Additional information

-

# Pollution

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
POL 01	Pollution prevention	4
POL 02	Flood risk assessment	4
POL 03	Impact mitigation	2
POL 04	Impacts of refrigerants	4
POL 05	Leak detection system	4
POL 06	NO <sub>x</sub> emissions	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>22</b>

## Asset Performance POL 01 – Pollution prevention

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are there light liquid separators fitted within the drainage system to vehicular areas and/or grease separators/filters for kitchen facilities, where required?

### Aim

To reduce the risk of polluting natural watercourses through contaminated surface run-off and/or grease from kitchen facilities entering drainage systems

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes, light liquid interceptors are installed within the drainage system to vehicular areas AND/OR grease separators/filters are installed within kitchen facilities, where required
4	Asset does not require light liquid separators or grease separators

### Assessment criteria

- Light liquid separators must be installed for all vehicular areas, and/or grease separators/filters must be installed within kitchen facilities, where required. Where either of these areas is not present, e.g. there are vehicular areas but no kitchen facilities; the criterion only applies to the vehicular areas.
- Where it can be demonstrated that drainage or wash down facilities do not lead water from inside an underground or covered area to natural watercourses, such areas comply with the requirements by default.
- An asset will not require light liquid separators or grease separators/filters if there are no parking and/or kitchen facilities on site.
- The following site areas (where present) require oil separators in surface water drainage systems:
  - Car parks larger than 800m<sup>2</sup> or with 50 or more parking spaces
  - Smaller car parks discharging to a sensitive environment
  - Areas where goods vehicles are parked or manoeuvred

- d) Vehicle maintenance areas
- e) Roads
- f) Industrial sites where oil is stored or used

## **Evidence**

1. Photographic evidence of interceptor equipment on site.
2. Manufacturer details.
3. Site plans detailing location of interceptors.

## **Additional information**

-

## Asset Performance POL 02 – Flood risk assessment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is the building located in a low or zero flood risk area?

### Aim

To encourage the identification of flood risk and implement mitigation measures, where required.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	No, flood mitigation measures required but not implemented
2	No, flood mitigation measures required and implemented
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- The level of flood risk is based on the level of risk for the area in which the asset is located. These are:
  - Asset is located in a high flood risk area
  - Asset is located in a medium flood risk area
  - Asset is located in a low flood risk area
  - Asset is located in a zero flood risk area
- Flooding from the following sources must be taken into account:
  - Fluvial (rivers)
  - Tidal (sea)
  - Surface water: sheet run-off from adjacent land (urban or rural)
  - Groundwater: most common in low-lying areas underlain by permeable rock (aquifers)
  - Sewers: combined, foul or surface water sewers
  - Reservoirs, canals and other artificial sources
  - A nearby functional flood plain (a zone that comprises land where water has to flow or be stored in times of flood)
- A Flood Risk Assessments (FRAs) should be carried out to identify the flood risk of the area in which the building is located.

4. FRAs are usually carried out during pre-construction as part of planning documentation; however post-construction assessments also meet credit criteria.
5. FRAs need to be undertaken by the relevant organisation/authority or a competent individual.
6. Where the asset is determined to be located in a low or zero flood risk area, no additional steps have to be taken to reduce and manage the impact of pollution associated with flooding.
7. It must be demonstrated that recommendations have been implemented.

## Evidence

1. FRA documentation from relevant body or competent individual.
2. Information regarding relevant qualifications and experience of the person/organisation that has carried out the FRA.
3. Photographic evidence of FRA recommendation implementation.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**A competent individual** will have qualifications and experience relevant to designing flood prevention measures and calculations. Where complex flooding calculations and prevention measures are required, this must be a specialist hydrological engineer.

## Asset Performance POL 03 – Impact mitigation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are there measures in place to minimise the rate of surface water runoff from the site?

### Aim

To reduce the risk of watercourse pollution and other environmental damage.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Appropriate measures to minimise surface water runoff include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Sustainable Drainage Systems (SUDS)
  - b) Permeable surfaces
  - c) Infiltration trenches
  - d) (Roof) planting
  - e) Rainwater tanks
2. Where applicable, measures should take account of the need to restrict discharge from chemical cleaning, which could include (but is not limited to):
  - a) Bunding around drainage systems
  - b) Double skinned containers
  - c) Light liquid separators
  - d) Shut-off valves fitted to the site drainage system to prevent the escape of chemicals to natural watercourses (in the event of a spillage or bunding failure).

### Evidence

1. Annotated photographic evidence of onsite measures.

### Additional information

-

## Asset Performance POL 04 – Impacts of refrigerants

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What refrigerants are used in the asset refrigeration equipment?

### Aim

To encourage the use of refrigerants with a low global warming potential (GWP) in refrigerant equipment.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	All refrigerants have a global warming potential of >10 (e.g. majority HFCs, HCFC, CFCs)
2	All refrigerants have a global warming potential of ≤10 (e.g. Propane, Butane)
4	All refrigerants have a global warming potential of ≤1 (e.g. Ammonia, Water, Carbon dioxide)
4	No refrigerants used
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

- The scope of this question will exclude domestic-scale refrigeration equipment and small plug-in chillers with integral refrigeration plant. Such systems on average have a charge less than 5kg, therefore in most circumstances individually installed or small multiple installations will not fall within scope of this credit. However, the assessor should ask the client organisation to confirm that the total charge is ≤5kg.
- The issue applies to all equipment and areas using refrigerants including, but not limited to:
  - Walk-in cold storage enclosures
  - Cold store services including, but not limited to; chilled water pipe work, refrigerant pipe work and ductwork
  - Comfort cooling
- A list of typical refrigerants with a low GWP can be found in Table 13 in the additional information section of this issue.
- This issue applies to refrigerants used in equipment that is installed on-site only.

## Evidence

1. Copy of manufacturer's information confirming the global warming potential of refrigerants used on site.
2. Photographic evidence of refrigerant packaging/systems (if necessary).
3. Statement from building manager indicating that the asset does not contain any systems that contain refrigerants.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**GWP:** GWP is defined as the potential for global warming that a chemical has relative to 1 unit of carbon dioxide, the primary greenhouse gas. In determining the GWP of the refrigerant, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) methodology using a 100-year Integrated Time Horizon (or ITH) should be applied.

**Refrigerant:** There are three main make-ups of refrigerants:

1. **Hydrogenated Fluorocarbon Refrigerants (HFCs)** are made up of hydrogen, fluorine, and carbon. Because they do not use a chlorine atom (which is used in most refrigerants) they are known to be one of the least damaging to our ozone.
2. **Hydrogenated Chlorofluorocarbon Refrigerants (HCFCs)** are made up of hydrogen, chlorine, fluorine, and carbon. These refrigerants contain minimal amounts of chlorine; they are not as detrimental to the environment as some other refrigerants.
3. **Chlorofluorocarbon Refrigerants (CFCs)** contain chlorine, fluorine and carbon. These refrigerants carry high amounts of chlorine so they are known for being the most hazardous to the ozone layer.

The use of CFCs and HCFCs as refrigerants has been addressed under the Montreal protocol. Phase out programmes have been agreed resulting in these substances no longer being used as refrigerants in all new build and most existing situations. The industry's favoured replacements are currently HFCs which are often potent global warming contributors. Hydrocarbons and ammonia-based refrigerants have low or zero GWP. These are now widely available and are valid alternatives to HFCs in all buildings, provided health and safety issues are fully addressed. United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) hosts a HCFC Help Centre which contains information about the management and phase out of HCFCs and alternatives to.

Table 13 contains a list of common refrigerant types with a low GWP.

Table 13: Common refrigerant types with a low GWP

R-Number	Chemical name	GWP 100-yr
R-30	Dichloromethane	9
R-170	Ethane	3
R-290	Propane	3
R-600	Butane	3
R-600a	Isobutane	3

R-Number	Chemical name	GWP 100-yr
R-702	Hydrogen	5.8
R-717	Ammonia	0
R-718	Water	<1
R-729	Air (nitrogen, oxygen, argon)	0
R-744	Carbon dioxide	1
R-1150	Ethylene	3
R-1234yf	2,3,3,3-Tetrafluoropropene	<1
R-1270	Propylene	3

Sources: The United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) '2010 Report of the Refrigeration, Air-conditioning and Heat Pumps Technical Options Committee'

EN 378-1:2008+A2:2012: Refrigerating systems and heat pumps - Safety and environmental requirements. Part 1: Basic requirements, definitions, classification and selection criteria - Annex E.

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 5th Assessment Report, Chapter 8, 'Anthropogenic and Natural Radiative Forcing', 2013

'Global environmental impacts of the hydrogen economy', Derwent *et al*, Int. J. Nuclear Hydrogen Production and Application, Vol. 1, No. 1, 2006

## Asset Performance POL 05 – Leak detection systems

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is there an automated refrigerant leak detection system in place for all equipment that use refrigerants?

### Aim

To reduce the level of greenhouse gas emissions related to the leakage of refrigerants.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No leak detection system in place
3	Yes, warning alarm/lighting only
4	No refrigerants used
4	Yes, automatic shutdown and pump down of refrigerants and warning alarm/lighting
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. A leak detection system should be in place for systems that are installed in the building for the following uses, including, but not limited to:
  - a) Comfort cooling
  - b) Cold storage, including commercial food/drink display cabinets but excluding domestic white goods e.g. fridges and freezers
  - c) Process based cooling loads e.g. servers/I.T equipment
2. Refrigerant leak detection systems are not required and thus credits can be awarded if:
  - a) Only small multiple hermetic systems are installed; where the refrigerant charge in each unit is less than 5kg.
  - b) Environmentally benign refrigerants are used; such as air and water.
  - c) Systems use solid refrigerants, where very little refrigerant will escape to the atmosphere in the event of system failure and leakage. This must be confirmed by the refrigeration system manufacturer.

## Evidence

1. Operation and maintenance manuals detailing installation of leak detection system or site inspection.
2. In the case of solid refrigerants, manufacturer confirmation of minimal leak risk.

## Additional information

-

## Asset Performance POL 06 – NO<sub>x</sub> emissions

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Does the building generate nitrogen oxide (NO<sub>x</sub>) emissions as a result of any on-site combustion of fuel to meet space heating or hot water demand?

### Aim

To encourage and recognise the use of heating that minimises NO<sub>x</sub> emissions.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Yes
4	No

### Assessment criteria

- For this question NO<sub>x</sub> is mainly emitted from high temperature combustion where trace elements of nitrogen exist in the fuel, such as: coal, oil and gas etc. However high-temperature oxidation of molecular nitrogen in the air used for combustion also releases NO<sub>x</sub>, although temperatures need to be around 1,500°C before this occurs.
- If a 'No' answer is selected, assessors must confirm that relevant equipment on site or within the asset does not utilise the fuel types which have been specified.

### Evidence

- Copy of manufacturer's details for equipment installed and their dry NO<sub>x</sub> emissions rate in mg/kWh.
- Photographic evidence of heating system(s).

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**NO<sub>x</sub> emissions:** NO<sub>x</sub> emissions are pollutant gases produced by the combustion of fuels. NO<sub>x</sub> reacts with heat and sunlight to produce ozone that can cause serious respiratory problems. It also reacts with water to produce acid rain which has a detrimental effect on ecosystems.

# Part 2: Building Management

# Management

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAN 01	Building user guide	2
MAN 02	Building user education	2
MAN 03	Building user information	2
MAN 04	Operation and maintenance manuals	2
MAN 05	Maintenance procedures	6
MAN 06	Maintenance policy	4
MAN 07	Environmental policies and responsibilities	4
MAN 08	Environmental policies	4
MAN 09	Operating procedures	4
MAN 10	Leak testing	4
MAN 11	Green lease	4
MAN 12	Building controls review	4
MAN 13	Building adaptation	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>46</b>

## Building Management MAN 01 – Building user guide

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Has relevant information from the building user guide been made accessible to all building users?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the provision of appropriate guidance for building users which enables them to understand and use the building.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Dedicated building/site specific guidance for the non-technical building user. The purpose of the guide is to help building users access, understand and operate the building efficiently and in a manner in keeping with the original design intent.
2. A Building User Guide will provide easily accessible and understandable information relevant to the following stakeholders:
  - a) The building's staff (or where relevant residents)
  - b) The non-technical facilities management team/building manager
  - c) Other building users, e.g. visitors/community users
3. The content of the guide will be specific to the building type and end users, but broadly should include information on the following:
  - a) Technical Overview of the building and its environmental strategy, e.g. energy/water/waste efficiency policy/strategy and how users should engage with/deliver the policy/strategy
  - b) Building services overview and access to controls, e.g. where to find them, what they control, how to operate effectively and efficiently etc.
  - c) Pre-arrival information for visitors, e.g. access and security procedures/provisions
  - d) Provision of, and access to, shared facilities
  - e) Safety and emergency information/instructions
  - f) Building related operational procedures specific to building type/operation, e.g. laboratories

- g) Building related incident reporting/feedback arrangements
  - h) Building related training information/links
  - i) Provision of, and access to, transport facilities, e.g. public transport, cyclist facilities, pedestrian routes etc.
  - j) Provision of, and access to, local amenities
  - k) Re-fit, refurbishment and maintenance arrangements/considerations
  - l) Links, references and relevant contact details
4. There is no requirement on the format the Building User Guide should take.

## **Evidence**

1. Copies of relevant sections of the Building User Guide.
2. Details how relevant information has been made accessible to building users, examples include (but are not limited to):
  - a) training schedules
  - b) copy of emails to (new) building users)
  - c) copy of information pack handed to new building users

## **Additional information**

-

## Building Management MAN 02 – Building user education

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are regular meetings or formal communications scheduled with occupants to discuss asset related issues (including environmental matters), and are such issues reported to the management?

### Aim

To facilitate structured feedback and awareness which enables management staff and building occupants to understand how to better operate the building.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Meetings should be scheduled at appropriate intervals and locations, and when new procedures are adopted or systems/controls installed.
2. Formal communications should be scheduled at appropriate intervals, and when new procedures are adopted or systems/controls installed.
3. Formal communications include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Standard feedback forms
  - b) Dedicated email address
  - c) Intranet feedback forms
  - d) Standard forms in areas accessible by all staff

### Evidence

1. Formal organisational documentation, such as meeting minutes.
2. Confirm with meeting attendees (identified via a minutes document for example) that meetings take place at reasonable intervals.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management MAN 03 – Building user information

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is a notice board or display area present within the asset to provide staff and visitors with information relating to the environmental policies and/or performance of the asset?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage building management that informs occupants about asset performance.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- Evidence is provided to demonstrate that environmental matters related to the building/organisation are communicated through the use of notice board(s) or building specific display areas.
- Notice boards can report on information relating to:
  - Health, Safety and Environmental policies
  - Building/Organisational Operating Procedures
  - Asset/organisational environmental performance
  - Public transport
  - Environmental best practice topics

### Evidence

- Photographic evidence of notice board/display area.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management MAN 04 – Operation and maintenance manuals

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is a full set of operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals available and accessible by building management/facilities management staff?

### Aim

To ensure adequate technical information is available to managers and contractors carrying out necessary management, maintenance and refurbishment duties.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Building O&M manuals should cover all current and relevant building services and building elements which may include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Heating and cooling systems
  - b) Water distribution systems
  - c) Ventilation systems
  - d) Lighting systems
  - e) External shading systems
  - f) Construction/specification details for building fabric
  - g) Renewable and low carbon technologies (where present)

### Evidence

1. List of all current and relevant building services and elements included in the O&M manuals.
2. Photocopy/photographic evidence of the front cover and table of contents of the O&M manuals.

## Additional information

### Other information

The assessor is **NOT** required to assess the content of the O&M manuals, but must ensure that all relevant documents are available and accessible.

Where a building is managed by a building management contractor the manuals may be kept off site, but it is important that the information is in a form that makes it easy for contractors to obtain copies and make use of them on site.

## Building Management MAN 05 – Maintenance procedures

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
6	No

### Question

Please tick where there is a maintenance policy/procedure in place for the following building elements/services.

### Aim

To recognise and encourage:

- best practice maintenance of building elements/services
- the setting of periodic schedules to manage the efficiency of the assets infrastructure
- procedures that ensure building equipment is working efficiently
- that proactive and appropriate inspections are in place

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option (tick where appropriate)	
0	Question not answered	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Don't know	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Building fabric	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Heating, Ventilation and Cooling (HVAC) systems, as applicable, and hot water	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Lighting	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

1. In order to award the credits for HVAC systems, procedures should be in place to cover all HVAC systems, as applicable.
2. It can be demonstrated how the policy is implemented at the local level, either through general organisational operation, or project related initiatives and management strategies.
3. The maintenance policy/procedure should include an established periodic scheduled maintenance procedure allowing the building and its services to be maintained in good condition.
4. Maintenance reports should state as a minimum:
  - a) Person or organisation carrying out the maintenance
  - b) Date the maintenance has been carried out
  - c) Description of building service/element that has been maintained
  - d) Outcomes of maintenance procedure
  - e) Actions following the maintenance procedure

- f) Date indicating next maintenance interval

## **Evidence**

1. Formal organisational documentation illustrating maintenance schedules.
2. Photocopy of reports of last maintenance procedure for the systems specified. This could be a cover page and table of contents and must clearly state:
  - a) Person or organisation carrying out the maintenance
  - b) Date the maintenance has been carried out
  - c) Description of building service/element that has been maintained.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

If a building is mechanically ventilated, typically all aspects would be in place; therefore maintenance policies/procedures should be in place to cover these.

If a building is naturally ventilated, typically no aspects, or only ventilation, would be in place; therefore a maintenance policy/procedure for these aspects does not have to be in place.

## Building Management MAN 06 – Maintenance policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is/are the maintenance policy(ies) proactive or reactive?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage proactive maintenance policies that enable the efficient operation of the building.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	Reactive policy only. Policy reviewed more than 1 year ago
2	Reactive policy only. Policy reviewed within the last year
3	Proactive maintenance policy. Policy reviewed more than 1 year ago
4	Proactive maintenance policy. Policy reviewed within the last year
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. A reactive maintenance policy is a policy where maintenance is carried out when problems are reported.
2. A proactive maintenance policy is a policy where maintenance is planned with regular intervals with the aim to prevent faults or breakdowns from occurring.
3. Information within the policy outlines:
  - a) The scope and aims of the policy
  - b) Who has endorsed and has responsibility for that policy
  - c) How it will be implemented and policy objectives achieved
  - d) Schedule specifying what maintenance has been and will be undertaken at set intervals
4. The maintenance policy/procedure should include an established periodic scheduled maintenance procedure allowing the building and plant to be maintained in good condition.
5. Maintenance policies should be regularly reviewed, at least when there are significant changes made to the building or equipment is replaced.

6. The facilities manager/building manager demonstrates (i.e. through examples) how the policy is implemented and affected at the local level, either through general organisational operation, or project related initiatives and management strategies.

### **Evidence**

1. A copy of the maintenance policy.
2. A review schedule of the maintenance policy.

### **Additional information**

-

## Building Management MAN 07 – Environmental policies and responsibilities

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Has an environmental management policy or plan been developed by the building management organisation?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage that environmental management provisions are in place.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	The building management organisation has developed and implemented an environmental policy or plan approved by the board of directors/senior managers
2	The environmental policy or plan has been distributed throughout the building management organisation and responsibilities have been set
3	The building management organisation has developed and implemented an environmental management policy or plan, including scope, objectives and targets
4	The environmental management policy or plan has been accredited to ISO 14001 or equivalent standards
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Where the environmental management policy or plan has been ISO 14001 certified, the assessor does not need to check its content or structure.
2. The environmental management policy or plan must be in use and the review process must ensure that targets are set and action plans are completed.
3. The environmental management plan or policy must be available and accessible by all building users.

### Evidence

1. Signed copy of environmental policy document.

2. Evidence of communication of plan to staff.
3. List of responsibilities and persons identified as champions to help implement these responsibilities.
4. Where the Environmental Management System is third party certified: a copy of a valid Environmental Management System certificate must be provided.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

Tailored Environmental Management Systems that are verified by a competent independent third party assessor could meet the requirements to achieve 4 credits provided that the certifying body is internationally recognised.

## Building Management MAN 08 – Environmental policies

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Does the building management team have an environmental management policy in place that requires improvement targets to be met?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage policies that aim to reduce the assets environmental impacts through defined improvement targets.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, improvement targets have been set for energy consumption
2	Yes, improvement targets have been set for energy and water consumption
2	Yes, improvement targets have been set for energy and waste/recycling
3	Yes, improvement targets have been set for energy, water and waste/recycling
4	Yes, improvement targets have been set for all of the above, and additional resource performance and sustainability indicators
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Additional resource performance criteria could include biodiversity, pollution, procurement improvement etc.
2. The policy should have senior management approval.
3. The asset owner demonstrates (i.e. through examples) how the policy is implemented and affected at the local level, either through general organisational operation, or project related initiatives and management strategies.

### Evidence

1. A copy of the environmental policy document highlighting areas in which improvement targets have been set.

2. Specific examples that demonstrate environmental impacts are being measured and put into a format which is easy to interpret; such as past annual figures being used as benchmarks within a spread sheet etc.

### **Additional information**

-

## Building Management MAN 09 – Operating procedures

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are operating procedures in place to help reduce energy consumption?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage procedures that ensure energy consumption within the building is controlled and reduced where practicable.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No plans/procedures for minimising energy consumption are in place
2	Yes - Energy reduction plans/procedures are in place
4	Yes - Energy reduction plans/procedures that include annual budgets for energy efficiency and reduction measures are in place
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

- The operating procedures should be formally documented and available to all relevant building users.
- The operating procedures should be updated regularly to help ensure alignment with overall energy management plans (or other related documents). These updates should at least occur when:
  - New energy consuming technologies/products or serviced are introduced in the asset.
  - The energy management plan (or other related document) is reviewed.
- Operating procedures to help reduce energy consumption should include (but are not limited to) the following:
  - Allocation of adequate resources (financial and human) to energy management.
  - There is a reliable and effective system for monitoring and reporting energy performance.
  - Targeting all relevant areas and building users, active engagement of the workforce around energy issues.

## Evidence

1. Copies of relevant documentation outlining the procedures that are in place to reduce energy consumption.
2. Update schedule
3. Description of how procedures are communicated with relevant building users.

## Additional information

-

## Building Management MAN 10 – Leak testing

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are duct and air handling unit leakage tests undertaken regularly, and are leaks rectified if identified?

### Aim

To ensure ventilation systems operate at optimum efficiency.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Not tested
4	Yes, tested regularly and leaks have been rectified
4	Not applicable

### Assessment criteria

1. Testing should be undertaken on a yearly basis, either by competent members of the facilities team or third party professionals.
2. Air duct and handling systems should be tested in accordance with regional/nationals standards or best practice guidance.

### Evidence

1. Evidence of relevant building monitoring/testing procedures, this could be within relevant sections taken from Building Management MAN 04 – Operation and maintenance manuals
2. Copy of inspection logs.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management MAN 11 – Green lease

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are green lease agreements/contracts with tenants in place?

### Aim

To encourage the implementation of lease agreements that contain incentives to actively engage tenants to consider energy, water, and waste efficient practices.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes, with qualitative targets
4	Yes, with qualitative and quantitative targets on at least lighting and energy

### Assessment criteria

1. Green leases can include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Energy efficiency targets
  - b) Alteration
  - c) Tenant handbook/Environmental policy/Energy management plan data
  - d) Reporting
  - e) Improvements/schedule of dilapidations
  - f) Financial incentives
  - g) Preferred maintenance contractors
  - h) Separate energy, water, and/or gas metering
  - i) Dispute resolution procedures
2. Where the asset is multi tenanted, a green lease agreement/contract must be in place for at least 75% of the tenants.

### Evidence

1. A copy of the tenant contract with the green lease section and scope highlighted or identified.

## Additional information

-

## Building Management MAN 12 – Building controls review

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are building management systems regularly reviewed to ensure they are fully functional and operating as intended?

### Aim

To ensure building management systems are running efficiently and effectively.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes – monitored by in-house FM team
4	Yes – monitored and/or certified by accredited third party auditor
4	Not applicable – no building management system within asset

### Assessment criteria

1. This issue is addressing full building management systems. Individual automated controls, such as PIRs controlling lighting, are **NOT** considered to be a building management system.
2. In house FM team members must be trained to be able to operate the building management system to high efficiency standards.
3. Building management systems must be reviewed at least every 6 months.
4. Accredited third party professionals should be experts in how to operate the specific system which is being assessed. An example of such persons would be:
  - a) Members of relevant organisations such as the European Building Automation and Controls Association.

### Evidence

1. Copy of inspection log.
2. Written confirmation from qualified person (such as a member of the FM team or third party auditor) to the assessor that there is no building management system in the building.

## Additional information

### Other information

Third party accreditation schemes for checking automatic controls systems are available, including the eu.bac methodology. More information concerning the eu.bac methodology can be found on: <http://system.eubac.org/index.php?id=251>

## Building Management MAN 13 – Building adaptation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is an asset strategy in place that outlines possible adaptation strategies/procedures to meet future demands, including those relating to climate change and changes in functionality?

### Aim

To encourage the asset management team to have appropriate strategies/procedures in place that outline possible adaptation to the asset to meet to future demands.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. The scope of the strategy should cover (but is not limited to):
  - a) The potential for major refurbishment, including replacing the façade.
  - b) Design aspects that facilitate the replacement of all major plant within the life of the building e.g. panels in floors/walls that can be removed without affecting the structure, providing lifting beams and hoists.
  - c) The degree of adaptability of the internal environment to accommodate changes in working practices.
  - d) The degree of adaptability of the internal physical space and external shell to accommodate change in-use.
  - e) The extent of accessibility to local services, such as local power, data infrastructure etc.

### Evidence

1. Copy of strategies/procedures for adaptation of the asset to meet changing future demands.

### Additional information

-

# Health and Wellbeing

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
HEA 12	Fresh air rates	4
HEA 13	Operating temperature	2
HEA 14	Internal environment: CO <sub>2</sub> monitoring	2
HEA 15	Internal environment: CO monitoring	2
HEA 16	Internal environment: NO <sub>x</sub> monitoring	2
HEA 17	Internal environment: refurbishment/renovation/redecoration	2
HEA 18	Volatile organic compounds	2
HEA 19	Control of chemicals	4
HEA 20	Acoustic conditions	4
HEA 21	Deep cleaning	4
HEA 22	Legionella management	2
HEA 23	Occupant satisfaction	3
HEA 24	Occupant satisfaction: feedback	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>37</b>

## Building Management HEA 12 – Fresh air rates

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

If the asset uses mechanical ventilation, have “fresh” air rates been measured?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage a healthy internal environment through the supply of sufficient fresh air.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
3	Measured fresh air rates are in line with the current national building regulations
4	Measured fresh air rates are in line with published local best practice
4	Not applicable, the asset is not mechanically ventilated

### Assessment criteria

- Measurements are to be undertaken by competent persons.
- Fresh air measurements must have been taken within 12 months of the assessment date and when major changes to the building or its occupancy have been made.
- Where measurements have been taken in line with local best practise or building regulations, the proper procedures must have been followed. This must be demonstrated as part of the evidence.
- Fresh air rates need to be measured in all relevant areas of the building in order to comply.

### Evidence

- Copy of report confirming:
  - Measured fresh air rates
  - That fresh air measurement has taken place in line with relevant guidance (if applicable)
  - That fresh air supply meets or exceeds standards against which it was assessed (if applicable)

2. Confirmation of competency of person/organisation undertaking air quality testing. This could be a copy of the measured results or schedule of work that includes the name(s) and qualifications of the qualified person(s).

## **Additional information**

### **Relevant definitions**

Relevant building area: occupied space which is a room or space within the assessed building that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by a building user. This includes public areas, such as dayrooms, exercise areas and communal areas, in shopping centres.

## Building Management HEA 13 – Operating temperature

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are temperatures managed in accordance with the design specifications of the asset?

### Aim

To ensure that the temperature within the asset meets the design specifications.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. For mechanically ventilated spaces, the temperatures within the building as specified in the design for winter and summer should be managed.
2. For naturally ventilated spaces, the temperature within the building as specified in the design for winter temperatures should be managed. The temperature set for thermostats can be used to meet the requirements.

### Evidence

1. Building management system readings or manual recordings of summer and winter temperature (as applicable).
2. Copy of design specification outlining summer and winter temperature (as applicable) of the asset.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management HEA 14 – Internal environment: CO<sub>2</sub> monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are internal levels of Carbon Dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) monitored and controlled?

### Aim

To encourage the monitoring of internal conditions to ensure a healthy indoor environment is provided.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. CO<sub>2</sub> levels should be measured in all relevant areas within the asset as follows:
  - a) Areas of the building subject to large and unpredictable or variable occupancy patterns have CO<sub>2</sub> sensors specified, AND:
    - i. **In mechanically ventilated spaces:**  
The sensor(s) are linked to the mechanical ventilation system and provide demand-controlled ventilation to the space.
    - ii. **In naturally ventilated spaces:**  
The sensors either have the ability to alert the building owner/manager when levels exceed the recommended set point, or are linked to controls with the ability to adjust the quantity of fresh air, i.e. automatic opening windows/roof vents.
  - b) For all other building areas regular and planned measurements of CO<sub>2</sub> should be logged for a period of one week's typical occupancy for the building, in all occupied spaces, under normal operating conditions, at least 4 times a year.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of measuring equipment.

2. Specifications of the measuring equipment installed and in-use, including a brief outline of the scope of operation.
3. Copy of procedures and/or monitoring log.

### **Additional information**

-

## Building Management HEA 15 – Internal environment: CO monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are internal levels of Carbon Monoxide (CO) monitored and controlled where sources of CO have been identified inside the asset and in proximity to external air intakes?

### Aim

To encourage the monitoring of internal conditions to ensure a healthy indoor environment is provided.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
2	There are no internal sources of CO and no external air intakes present/external air intakes are not in proximity to sources of CO
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

- CO levels should be continuously monitored and controlled in the following areas:
  - Where sources of CO are installed internally.
  - In external air intakes that are within 20 metres of possible sources of CO.
- An alarm should be activated when CO levels rise above a pre-set maximum for a pre-set period of time.

### Evidence

- Photographic evidence of measuring equipment.
- Specifications of the measuring equipment installed and in-use, including a brief outline of the scope of operation.
- Copy of procedures and/or monitoring log.
- List of sources of CO that are installed in the building and/or near external air intakes.

5. Diagrams, photos or plans indicating internal sources of CO and/or sources of CO in proximity to external air intakes.
6. Where no sources of CO are installed in the building or where there are no sources of CO near external air intake:
  - a) Confirmation of building management team that no sources of CO have been installed

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

Sources of CO emissions include all fuel burning devices, including (but not limited to):

- Traffic from nearby roads
- Traffic at loading docks
- Back-up generators
- CO emissions related to cooling, heating or providing electricity to the asset

## Building Management HEA 16 – Internal environment: NO<sub>x</sub> monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are internal levels of Nitrogen Oxides (NO<sub>x</sub>) monitored and controlled where sources of NO<sub>x</sub> have been identified inside the asset and in proximity to external air intakes?

### Aim

To encourage the monitoring of internal conditions to ensure a healthy indoor environment is provided.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
2	This is not necessary for the asset
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

- NO<sub>x</sub> levels should be continuously monitored and controlled in the following areas:
  - Where sources of NO<sub>x</sub> are installed internally
  - In external air intakes that are within 20 metres of possible sources of NO<sub>x</sub>
- An alarm should be activated when NO<sub>x</sub> levels rise above a pre-set maximum for a pre-set period of time.
- Sources of NO<sub>x</sub> emissions include all fuel burning devices, including (but not limited to):
  - Traffic from nearby roads
  - Traffic at loading docks
  - Back-up generators
  - NO<sub>x</sub> emissions related to cooling, heating or providing electricity to the asset

### Evidence

- Photographic evidence of measuring equipment.

2. Specifications of the measuring equipment installed and in-use, including a brief outline of the scope of operation.
3. Copy of procedures and/or monitoring log.
4. List of sources of NO<sub>x</sub> that are installed in the building and/or near external air intakes.
5. Diagrams, photos or plans indicating internal sources of NO<sub>x</sub> and/or sources of NO<sub>x</sub> in proximity to external air intakes.
6. Where no sources of NO<sub>x</sub> are installed in the building or where there are no sources of NO<sub>x</sub> near external air intake:
  - a) Confirmation of building management team that no sources of NO<sub>x</sub> have been installed.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**NO<sub>x</sub> emissions:** NO<sub>x</sub> emissions are pollutant gases produced by the combustion of fossil fuels. NO<sub>x</sub> reacts with heat and sunlight to produce ozone that can cause serious respiratory problems. It also reacts with water to produce acid rain which has a detrimental effect on ecosystems.

## Building Management HEA 17 – Internal environment: refurbishment/renovation/redecoration

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are policies/procedures in place to minimise the exposure of building occupants to chemicals and dusts released by refurbishment/renovation/redecoration works?

### Aim

To reduce the risk to health associated with chemical and/or dust exposure.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Policies/formal procedures to minimise risk to building occupants from building refurbishment/renovation/redecoration must be in place. These can be:
  - a) Included within risk assessments that are conducted/undertaken prior to any work taking place.
  - b) Included in an internal organisational policy, where these policies/procedures can be easily identified.

### Evidence

1. Copy of official documents which highlight the methods and relevant clauses which set conditions to minimise exposure to chemicals and dust during refurbishment/renovation/redecoration works.
2. Evidence of precautions taken for previous works, including relevant risk assessments which assess the conditions and risks identified (if relevant).

### Additional information

-

## Building Management HEA 18 – Volatile organic compounds

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is there a strategy/policy in place for minimising the use of harmful volatile organic compound (VOC) emitting materials/substances?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage a healthy internal environment through the use of internal finishes, fittings and cleaning products with reduced/no emissions of VOCs.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
2	Yes, part of a maintenance policy

### Assessment criteria

1. Strategies/policies to reduce the use of harmful VOC emitting materials/substances can either be stand-alone documents or part of a wider environmental policy/strategy.
2. Strategies can be based on (a combination of):
  - a) Procurement
  - b) Process
  - c) Risk aversion
  - d) Maintenance
3. Typical materials/substances that should be covered by the policy/procedure:
  - a) Paints, adhesives, and cleaning materials
  - b) Electrical appliances such as printers
  - c) Carpet and other flooring materials
  - d) Office furniture

## Evidence

1. Copy of relevant policy/procedure.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Volatile organic compounds** (VOCs) are emitted by a wide array of products numbering in the thousands. Examples include: paints and lacquers, paint strippers, cleaning supplies, pesticides, building materials and furnishings, glues and adhesives, Urea-formaldehyde foam insulation (UFFI), pressed wood products (hardwood plywood wall panelling, particleboard, fibreboard) and furniture made with these pressed wood products.

## Building Management HEA 19 – Control of chemicals

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is adequate ventilation provided to relevant building areas to keep the concentration of pollutants from printers and specialist equipment at acceptable levels?

### Aim

To maintain acceptable levels of internal air quality.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Adequate ventilation (natural or mechanical) in order to comply with this requirement is required where windows cannot be opened in the immediate vicinity, or ventilation within the building is poor.
2. Relevant building areas are areas within the building where any of the equipment mentioned in the question are installed/placed.
3. Adequate ventilation for specialist equipment must be provided where this is stated within the manufacturer guidance.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of extract fans / ventilation systems.
2. Floor plan indicating where equipment is placed and where ventilation is in place.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management HEA 20 – Acoustic conditions

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Have internal acoustic conditions been monitored by a suitably qualified third party acoustician?

### Aim

To ensure the acoustic performance of the building meets the appropriate best practice standards.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	Yes, and all recommendations have been implemented

### Assessment criteria

1. A named third party acoustician is responsible for optimising acoustic comfort and ensuring compliance with the appropriate best practice standards.
2. As a minimum, monitoring of acoustic comfort should be carried out when changes are made to the building fabric or building services that would influence acoustic conditions in the relevant spaces within the building.
3. Acoustic conditions need to be measured in all relevant spaces in the building in order to comply with the issue.
4. Acoustic conditions should be in line with national standards or best practice guidelines.

### Evidence

1. Details of the individual responsible for the acoustic maintenance and monitoring; including qualification.
2. Records of monitoring demonstrating compliance with appropriate best practice standards.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Relevant building area:** occupied space which is a room or space within the assessed building that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by a building user. This includes public areas, such as dayrooms, exercise areas and communal areas, in shopping centres.

**Third party acoustician:** An individual achieving the following items can be considered to be 'suitably qualified' for the purposes of this issue:

1. Holds a university/higher education qualification or equivalent qualification in acoustics.
2. Has a minimum of three years relevant experience (within the last five years). Such experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of factors affecting acoustics in relation to construction and the built environment, including, acting in an advisory capacity to provide recommendations for suitable acoustic performance levels and mitigation measures.

## Building Management HEA 21 – Deep cleaning

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is there a strategy in place to carry out deep cleaning, at an appropriate frequency?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage a policy of regular cleaning to reduce the risk to health associated with poor building cleanliness.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, deep cleaning of soft furnishings and/or carpets carried out once every three years
2	Yes, deep cleaning of soft furnishings and/or carpets carried out more than once every three years
4	Yes, deep cleaning of soft furnishings and/or carpets carried out annually
4	There are no soft furnishings and/or carpets within the asset

### Assessment criteria

1. Deep cleaning would typically require the use of specialist/steam cleaning apparatus.
2. Regular daily cleaning of soft furnishings and/or carpets is not considered 'deep cleaning'.
3. The use of harmful chemicals should be minimised to reduce the effects of deep cleaning on the indoor environment.

### Evidence

1. A copy of the maintenance/cleaning policy highlighting the relevant cleaning clauses.
2. Records of deep cleaning carried out.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management HEA 22 – Legionella management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are all systems that are installed to reduce the risk of Legionella contamination adequately maintained?

### Aim

To ensure Legionella contamination systems are maintained to avoid the risk of Legionella contamination.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Regular inspection and maintenance of all systems, by a competent third party contractor, in accordance with national regulations
2	No systems have been installed for the control of Legionella
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. There need to be fully documented operation and inspection maintenance manuals for each system. These manuals include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Listing of all equipment that is installed
  - b) Maintenance schedules for the installed equipment stating (at a minimum) the time intervals for:
    - i. Inspection (no more than 1 year)
    - ii. Overhaul
    - iii. Cleaning

### Evidence

1. Copy of list of systems that are installed to reduce the risk of Legionella contamination.
2. Copy of legionella inspection log and results.
3. If “No systems have been installed for the control of legionella” is selected the assessor must ensure that a copy of the report that outlines that no Legionella control systems are deemed

necessary should be provided. The report as specified in Asset Performance HEA 05 – Microbial contamination will suffice.

## **Additional information**

-

## Building Management HEA 23 – Occupant satisfaction

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

### Question

Are procedures in place for the collection and recording of occupant satisfaction in regards to the asset's internal environment?

### Aim

To ensure that building occupant satisfaction with the building is regularly monitored and reviewed so improvements can be made.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
3	Yes, third party system used as a basis for the survey
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

- Regular collection and recording of building occupant satisfaction (using an established procedure) should be undertaken at least once every three years and additionally when major changes in facility planning, building services etc. have been undertaken.
- The survey process should be designed to cover, as a minimum:
  - Internal environmental conditions
  - Internal environmental controls
  - Internal fit-out and contents
  - Communal facilities in the building
- The occupant satisfaction feedback process can be carried by an in-house team provided they can demonstrate that they have the necessary research skills and expertise in social research. An independent consultant may be more acceptable to the respondents in terms of maintaining the confidentiality of their responses.
- Qualitative methods, such as the use of structured interviews and/or focus groups may also comply, provided they involve a cross section of building occupants and cover the range of issues set out above.

5. To avoid de-motivation of respondents it is important in that the results and subsequent actions are communicated to the participants either in a report or a presentation. Where occupant satisfaction surveys have taken place, the assessor should check that contents of the survey and the results have been disseminated to respondents.

## **Evidence**

1. A copy of the building occupant's satisfaction feedback forms.
2. Copy of procedure and survey process.

## **Additional information**

-

## Building Management HEA 24 – Occupant satisfaction: feedback

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are procedures in place to address feedback and issues as highlighted in the occupant satisfaction survey process?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage procedures which act on information gathered through occupant satisfaction surveys so that the building performance can be optimised.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	Yes, targets are set and signed off at senior manager or director level
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Procedures to act on feedback from occupant satisfaction surveys should be undertaken at least once every three years and when major changes in facility planning, building services etc. have been made.
2. Targets should be set for all topics for which building occupants have highlighted issues.
3. All targets and procedures that are in place as a result of the occupant satisfaction survey should be accessible to all building occupants.
4. Process on targets and procedures should be reviewed annually.

### Evidence

1. Copy of reviews/targets that have been set based on occupant survey outcomes.
2. Records of how information on target setting and procedure development has been communicated with building occupants. This could either be through hard copy or soft copy.

## Additional information

-

# Energy

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
ENE 31	Energy consumption start date	Up to 40 credits are available.  Credits are calculated within the Energy Model
ENE 32	Energy consumption end date	
ENE 33	Electricity consumption	
ENE 34	Natural gas consumption	
ENE 35	LPG consumption	
ENE 36	Gas oil consumption	
ENE 37	Solid fossil fuel consumption	
ENE 38	Biodiesel consumption	
ENE 39	Biogas consumption	
ENE 40	Wood/Waste wood consumption	
ENE 41	District heating consumption	
ENE 42	Carbon intensity district heating	
ENE 43	District cooling consumption	
ENE 44	Carbon intensity district cooling	
ENE 45	Electricity exported	
ENE 46	Non-standard energy uses	
ENE 47, 50, 53, 56 & 59	Non-standard energy use	
ENE 48, 51, 54, 57 & 60	Non-standard energy consumption	
ENE 49, 52, 55, 58 & 61	Non-standard energy consumption floor area	
ENE 62	Energy consumption monitoring	
ENE 63	Energy consumption data use	4
ENE 64	Sub-metering: main energy sources	4

ENE 65	Sub-metering: other energy sources	4
ENE 66	Sub-metering: tenanted areas	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>60</b>

# Operational Energy Calculator Guidance

## Introduction

This section has been produced to give BREEAM In-Use assessors further guidance on the workings of the operational energy calculator so it is clear how any reductions in operational energy consumption will be reflected in the calculation of the operational energy rating.

## Overview

In order to calculate the operational energy rating, the carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) emissions resulting from actual building energy consumption are compared to the equivalent CO<sub>2</sub> emissions for a reference building. There are three main parts to the methodology: establishing the reference benchmark, establishing the actual building CO<sub>2</sub> emissions, and comparing the reference benchmark with the actual CO<sub>2</sub> emissions to generate a rating.

## Establishing reference benchmark

The reference benchmark is set according to the main activity type in the building being assessed. To reflect that there may be more than one activity carried out in any given building e.g. an office block with a restaurant area, it is possible to select up to five different asset types for a single assessment. Where more than one asset type is selected, the reference benchmark is calculated on an area weighted basis. This reference benchmark is adjusted to take account of local climate using the same degree day calculation methodology used for the asset model. In order to recognise the lower energy consumption of naturally ventilated properties, the reference benchmarks are based on a mix of both air conditioned and naturally ventilated premises.

The reference building energy consumption is converted to CO<sub>2</sub> by multiplying the electrical and non-electrical energy benchmarks by appropriate carbon emission factors. The carbon emissions factor for all non-electrical energy consumption is based on a natural gas / fuel oil mix and is fixed, irrespective of the country of assessment. The carbon emissions factor for electrical energy consumption varies according to the country of assessment.

## Establishing actual energy consumption

The metered energy consumption is used as the starting point for establishing the applicable energy consumption for the actual building. It is possible to make two 'corrections' to the metered energy consumption data:

- Energy consumption associated with non-standard energy uses that would not be considered typical for the type of building being assessed can be subtracted where separately metered.
- Any electricity exported from the site can be subtracted where there is a separate export meter.

A final correction is then made to account for consumption data based on any reporting period that is not 365 days.

Users are able to enter metered energy consumption for a number of different fuel types including: grid supplied electricity, natural gas, LPG, gas oil, solid fossil fuels, biodiesel, biogas, wood, district heating and district cooling.

Once the energy consumption for each fuel type has been entered, the tool calculates the associated CO<sub>2</sub> emissions for the actual building by multiplying the consumption data by the relevant carbon emission factors for each fuel type. As for the reference baseline, the carbon emission factor for electricity varies according to the country of assessment, but the emission factors for non-electrical consumption are fixed. The only exception to this is for district heating and cooling systems where it is possible to enter the actual emissions factor for the system where known.

## Establishing final score

The operational energy rating is then calculated by comparing the actual CO<sub>2</sub> emissions to the reference CO<sub>2</sub> emissions using a sliding scale with maximum credits being awarded for a zero carbon building, and zero credits awarded where the actual emissions are more than twice the reference emissions.

## Building Management ENE 31 – Energy consumption start date

Number of credits available	Minimum standards	Mandatory question
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No	Yes

### Question

Please enter the start date of the annual reporting period for consumption data applicable to questions Building Management ENE 33 – Electricity consumption to Building Management ENE 45 – Electricity exported.

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: DD/MM/YYYY
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Assessors must ensure that the reporting period is between 11 – 13 months.

### Evidence

1. Copies of energy bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.

### Additional information

#### Other information

The intention is that the user enters energy consumption data based on a 365 day period; however it is possible to enter data for any reporting period between 11 and 13 months. Any reporting period outside of the 11 to 13 month range would be invalid and result in zero credits being scored.

## Building Management ENE 32 – Energy consumption end date

Number of credits available	Minimum standards	Mandatory question
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No	Yes

### Question

Please enter the end date of the annual reporting period for consumption data applicable to questions Building Management ENE 33 – Electricity consumption to Building Management ENE 45 – Electricity exported.

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: DD/MM/YYYY
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Assessors must ensure that the reporting period is between 11 – 13 months.

### Evidence

1. Copies of energy bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.

### Additional information

#### Other information

The intention is that the user enters energy consumption data based on a 365 day period; however it is possible to enter data for any reporting period between 11 and 13 months. Any reporting period outside of the 11 to 13 month range would be invalid and result in zero credits being scored.

## Building Management ENE 33 – Electricity consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much mains supplied electricity is consumed by the asset in kWh/annum (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.

### Evidence

1. Copies of energy bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much natural gas is consumed by the asset in kWh/annum (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under: Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.

### Additional information

#### Other information

**Please note:** all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.

## Building Management ENE 35 – LPG consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much LPG is consumed by the asset in kWh (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
3. Calculating LPG usage can be achieved via:
  - a) Metering
  - b) Calculations based on inventory data (the number of canisters used on site) during the reporting period (where their specifications are known)

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.

### Additional information

#### Other information

**Please note:** all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.

## Building Management ENE 36 – Gas oil consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much gas oil (light fuel oil/diesel) is consumed by the asset in kWh (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. This figure regards fuel which has been used directly within the asset NOT for vehicles or other appliances which operate on site, unless this is specified within the scope.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
4. Recording fuel usage can be achieved through:
  - a) Metering of equipment
  - b) Estimates of system efficiency and running times
  - c) Calculations based on inventory data

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub meters (if relevant).

### Additional information

#### Other information

**Please note:** all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.

## Building Management ENE 37 – Solid fossil fuel consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much solid fossil fuel is consumed by the asset supplied in kWh (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Solid fossil fuel refers to the burning of solid material for the purposes of creating heat, such as Smokeless fuel, Coal and Anthracite.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
4. Calculating the amount of solid fuel usage can be achieved through:
  - a) Sub-metering of equipment which uses solid fuel
  - b) Invoices for materials purchased during the reporting period and calculations based on the calorific content of the material.

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant)

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 38 – Biodiesel consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much biodiesel is consumed by the asset in kWh/annum (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Cooking oil can only be used when it has been appropriately refined to a standard which is suitable for fuel usage.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
4. Calculating biodiesel usage can be achieved through:
  - a) Sub-metering of equipment which uses this fuel
  - b) Invoices for biodiesel materials purchased during the reporting period and calculations based on the calorific content of the material.

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant)

### Additional information

#### Other information

**Please note:** all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.

## Building Management ENE 39 – Biogas consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much biogas is consumed by the asset in kWh/annum (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Biogas can be used from offsite suppliers or as a result of onsite generation, following a process such as anaerobic digestion etc.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
4. Calculating biogas usage can be achieved through:
  - a) Sub-metering of equipment which uses this fuel
  - b) Invoices for gas imported during the reporting period

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant).

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 40 – Wood/Waste wood consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much wood/waste wood is consumed by the asset in kWh (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Calculating the amount of solid fuel usage can be achieved through invoices for materials purchased during the reporting period and calculations based on the calorific content of the material.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.

### Additional information

#### Other information

**Please note:** all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.

## Building Management ENE 41 – District heating consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Annually, how much district heating energy is consumed by the asset in kWh (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
3. Evidence provided will illustrate that an accurate calculation of district heating energy usage has been provided. This could include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Relevant metering of equipment
  - b) Building energy management systems
  - c) Calculation via energy bills for fuel types if these fuel types are only used for district heating etc.

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant).

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**District heating** refers to heating which is delivered via a central source to different parts of the building; a system that runs from central boilers for example.

## Other information

**Please note:** all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.

## Building Management ENE 42 – Carbon intensity district heating

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

If known, what is the carbon intensity of the district heating system in kgCO<sub>2</sub>/kWh?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. The carbon intensity of the district heating system would be sourced from the supplier of this system.

### Evidence

1. Relevant literature/records/data or other information from the district heating supplier stating the carbon intensity of the system.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the district cooling energy consumption in kWh/annum (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of GIA.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
3. Accurate calculation of district cooling energy usage could come from:
  - a) Relevant metering of equipment
  - b) Building energy management systems

### Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant).

### Additional information

#### Other information

**Please note:** all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.

## Building Management ENE 44 – Carbon intensity district cooling

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

If known, what is the carbon intensity of the district cooling system in kgCO<sub>2</sub>/kWh?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. The carbon intensity of the district cooling system would be sourced from the supplier of this system.

### Evidence

1. Relevant literature/records/data or other information from the district cooling supplier stating the carbon intensity of the system.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 45 – Electricity exported

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the quantity of electricity exported off site in kWh/annum (as metered in the reporting period)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

- The quantity of electricity exported off site would only need to be considered where there are separate meters for the import and export of electricity.  
Where these meters are combined, the contribution of electricity generated on site and exported off site will already be factored in to the main electricity consumption figure.
- Where a separate meter for import and export of electricity are installed on-site:
  - Only the electricity that is exported via the export meter should be taken in to account
- Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.

### Evidence

- Photographic evidence of relevant export meter
- Line diagram outlining the connection of the onsite electricity generators to the export meters.
- BEMS data.
- Copies of verified data for the 12 month period specified.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 46 – Non-standard energy uses

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Input the number of non-standard energy uses that are sub-metered within the asset (0-5 types).

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
-	Question not answered
-	0
-	1
-	2
-	3
-	4
-	5

### Assessment criteria

1. Non-standard energy uses, in this instance, are defined as:
  - a) Regional server room
  - b) Trading floor
  - c) Bakery oven
  - d) Sports flood lighting
  - e) Furnace or forming process
  - f) Blast chilling or freezing

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of sub-meters; a sample is sufficient.
2. Building plans illustrating the location of sub-meters.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 47, 50, 53, 56 & 59 – Non-standard energy use

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

Select the non-standard sub-metered energy use.

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
-	Question not answered
-	Regional server room
-	Trading floor
-	Bakery oven
-	Sports floodlighting
-	Furnace or forming process
-	Blast chilling or freezing

### Assessment criteria

1. Non-standard energy uses are defined as:
  - a) Regional server room: Energy used in a server room that services multiple satellite offices/servers
  - b) Trading floor: Energy used in a room where traders are gathered to operate on financial markets
  - c) Bakery oven: Energy used in a commercial sized oven used to bake foods.
  - d) Sports floodlighting: Energy used by broad-beamed, high intensity artificial lights (often used outside)
  - e) Furnace or forming process:
    - i. Energy used in a furnace: an industrial devise used for many things, such as extracting metals or as heat source in chemical plants.
    - ii. Energy used in forming process: a manufacturing process which makes uses of suitable stresses to cause deformation of materials to produce required shapes.

- f) Blast chilling or freezing: Energy used for cooling materials (often food) quickly to low temperatures.

## **Evidence**

1. Photographic evidence of non-standard energy use.
2. Written explanation what non-standard energy use is.

## **Additional information**

-

## Building Management ENE 48, 51, 54, 57 & 60 – Non-standard energy consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the energy usage of the non-standard sub-metered energy use?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: kWh/annum
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. Non-standard energy uses should be sub-metered to confirm the energy use associated with the non-standard energy use and area.

### Evidence

1. Copies of verified meter data for the 12 month period specified.
2. Photographic evidence of the installation of sub-meters for the non-standard energy use

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 49, 52, 55, 58 & 61 – Non-standard energy consumption floor area

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

### Question

What is the floor area associated with the non-standard energy use (m<sup>2</sup>)?

### Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

### Available credits

Credits	Provide data as: m <sup>2</sup>
N/A	

### Assessment criteria

1. The floor area that is associated with the non-standard energy use should be measured. The floor area is calculated as follows for the non-standard energy uses:
  - a) Regional server room: The area/room that comprises the regional server.
  - b) Trading floor: The area/floor that comprises the trading.
  - c) Bakery oven: The area comprising the bakery oven and the associated process.
  - d) Sports floodlighting: The area/grounds that are lit by the floodlights.
  - e) Furnace or forming process:
    - iii. The area comprising the furnace and the associated process.
    - iv. The area comprising the forming process.
  - f) Blast chilling or freezing: The area comprising the blast chiller/freezer and associated process.

### Evidence

1. Building plans illustrating floor area related to the non-standard energy use.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 62 – Energy consumption monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is energy consumption monitored and is this data accessible?

### Aim

To encourage the monitoring of energy consumption that in turn will allow building managers to set improvement targets.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Consumption data can be acquired from:
  - a) Meters (manually or automatically read)
  - b) Delivery and stock-level figures
2. In order to illustrate that this data is accessible, the building management team (or whoever is responsible for energy measurement) must present data held in a single location, such as a spread sheet, clearly arranged folders, building energy management systems or other relevant storage systems.

### Evidence

1. Records of energy consumption data as part of a spread sheet; calculated from metering data or energy bills.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 63 – Energy consumption data use

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

How is collected energy consumption data used?

### Aim

To facilitate the structured and systematic provision of reporting on energy consumption to encourage building users to understand and set efficiency improvement targets.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	Filed away
2	Compared against asset targets
3	Compared against asset targets and reported on internally
4	All of the above and in addition reported to management
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Building energy consumption should be monitored, targeted and reported to the appropriate level within the building occupant's organisational structure.
2. There are dedicated energy management/reduction targets endorsed at senior level. The targets must address/declare that:
  - a) The organisation is dedicated to reducing energy consumed as a result of its operation/s.
  - b) The organisation will work with occupiers/suppliers to address impacts of consumed energy and strategies to reduce consumption (if relevant).

### Evidence

1. Evidence of company utilising data in ways identified, such as:
  - a) Corporate Social Responsibility reports detailing how data is targeted and improved.
  - b) Evidence of improvement target setting and ways these are implemented.

## Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 64 – Sub-metering: main energy sources

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

How many of the following main energy uses are covered by separate sub-meters:

- Heating
- Cooling
- Interior Lighting
- Ventilation

### Aim

To facilitate the structured and systematic provision of reporting on energy consumption to ensure building users understand and set targets to operate the building more efficiently.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No sub-meters provided
1	1 of the main energy uses
2	2 of the main energy uses
3	3 of the main energy uses
4	4 of the main energy uses
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Only main energy uses are covered in this issue. Other energy uses are covered in Building Management ENE 65 – Sub-metering: other energy sources.
2. Assessors should verify that the sub-meters were operational during the reporting period.

### Evidence

1. Copies of verified meter data for the first and last date of the 12 month reporting period.
2. Line diagram indicating sub-meters and the related energy uses.

## Additional information

-

## Building Management ENE 65 – Sub-metering: other energy sources

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Which of the following energy uses are covered by separate sub-meters:

- Exterior lighting
- All means of vertical transportation (e.g. lifts and escalators)
- Display and aesthetical effects lighting
- Ventilation, heating and cooling in transitional spaces (e.g. air curtains and revolving doors)
- Small power

### Aim

To encourage separate metering of appliances within the asset in order to attain a better granularity of data which can be used to target improvements.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	None of the listed energy uses
1	1 of the listed energy uses
2	2 of the listed energy uses
3	3 of the listed energy uses
4	4 or more of the listed energy uses
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Only energy uses that are sub-metered should be selected.
2. Sub-metering for main energy uses is covered by Building Management ENE 64 – Sub-metering: main energy sources.

### Evidence

1. Copies or verified meter data for the first and last date of the 12 month period specified.

2. Line diagram indicating sub-meters and the related energy uses.

### **Additional information**

-

## Building Management ENE 66 – Sub-metering: tenanted areas

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are heating and cooling sub-meters provided for tenanted areas?

### Aim

To facilitate the structured and systematic provision of reporting on energy consumption to ensure building users understand and set targets to operate the asset more efficiently.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes the asset is partially sub-metered for tenanted areas
4	Yes the asset is fully sub-metered or occupied by a single tenant
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. It is noted that lighting and small power can be difficult to separate cost effectively for metering purposes. Therefore it is acceptable for lighting and small power to be combined per floor level.
2. For naturally ventilated assets: only heating sub-meters must be provided.

### Evidence

1. Copies of bills or verified data for the 12 month period specified.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Small power:** plug-in equipment/appliances connected through power points.

# Transport

The transport category is not assessed within Part 2 of a BREEAM In-Use assessment.

# Water

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
WAT 11	Annual consumption	4
WAT 12	Water consumption: monitoring and reporting	8
WAT 13	Drinking water	2
WAT 14	Refurbishment	2
WAT 15	Water strategy	4
WAT 16	Water recycling	4
WAT 17	Aspects and impacts	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>26</b>

## Building Management WAT 11 – Annual consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What is the annual water consumption? Enter volume in m<sup>3</sup>.

### Aim

To ensure management are aware of annual consumption from potable and non-potable water sources.

### Available credits

Credits	Enter volume in m <sup>3</sup>
4	

### Assessment criteria

1. Annual water consumption should include the sum of all water drawn into the boundaries of the reporting organisation. This includes water consumption from potable and non-potable water sources (including groundwater, rainwater and municipal water supply), for any use over the course of the reporting period.

### Evidence

1. Meter readings.
2. Utility bills.
3. Spread sheet data derived from bills or meter readings.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management WAT 12 – Water consumption: monitoring and reporting

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
8	No

### Question

Is there a strategy in place to use water monitoring data to minimise water consumption that includes target setting and reporting mechanisms?

### Aim

To use information gained from monitoring to help inform the water strategy and reduce overall consumption.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Strategy is in place, no other actions are taken
2	Strategy is in place and water targets are filed away
4	Strategy is in place that compares water consumption against asset targets
6	Strategy is in place that compares water consumption against asset targets and report on these internally
8	Strategy is in place that compares water consumption against asset targets and report on these internally and to management

### Assessment criteria

1. The strategy should outline how monitoring data will be used to help minimise water consumption. This could for example be through:
  - a) Identifying areas of unexpectedly high water consumption that could indicate system leaks.
  - b) Identifying the areas with high water consumption that should be targeted for installing water efficiency measures.
  - c) Making monitoring data available to asset users with a view to modifying user behaviour.

### Evidence

1. A copy of the strategy/policy.

2. Records of water consumption analysis; Spread sheet, summary report etc.
3. Copies of how water consumption and analysis have been reported internally such as:
  - a) Internal memos
  - b) Newsletters
  - c) Posters
  - d) Emails
4. Copies if how water consumption and analysis have been reported to management such as:
  - a) Summary
  - b) Executive report
  - c) Emails

### **Additional information**

-

## Building Management WAT 13 – Drinking water

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is the provision of drinking water regularly reviewed to ensure that it meets users' needs?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the provision of sufficient water access points.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- Drinking water access points need to be:
  - Easily accessible to all users; at least one access point per floor level
  - In a hygienic location and condition
  - Appropriate in number and placement to serve all building users; as determined by the assessor's best judgement
- Assessors should ensure that the number of occupants is regularly reviewed and that access to drinking points is reflective of any changes in occupants.
- Drinking water access points should at least be reviewed after:
  - Refurbishments or alterations have been made to the building
  - Significant changes in the number of occupants are recorded

### Evidence

- Documentation specifying number of occupants in the building and per floor and the number of access points to drinking water, i.e. building plans specifying access points and number of occupants.
- Documentation outlining review schedules, major changes to the building or changes in numbers of occupants.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management WAT 14 – Refurbishment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is there a policy in place to replace water appliances and fittings with low water use equivalents during refurbishments?

### Aim

Promoting the reduction of water consumption through installation of water-efficient fixtures and fittings.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. As a minimum, the policy should include:
  - a) A replacement programme.
  - b) A schedule of approved replacement appliances. The appliances listed in this schedule should be easy to identify to be of low water use by relevant labelling.
2. If all water appliances and fittings have already been replaced with low water use equivalents, a policy should still be in place to ensure a continuation of good practice.

### Evidence

1. Copy of the policy document.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management WAT 15 – Water strategy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Does the organisation have a strategy for maintaining water systems?

### Aim

To ensure that reliable water supplies are maintained and any wastage through leaks are minimised.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	Yes, it is a proactive maintenance policy
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. A proactive maintenance policy is a defined maintenance strategy to ensure that the reliability of the installed fittings and water systems is increased. These maintenance policies typically consist of two parts:
  - a) Preventive maintenance: maintenance, measurements, tests, parts replacement, etc. to prevent faults from occurring.
  - b) Predictive maintenance: maintenance techniques that are designed to help determine the condition of installed equipment in order to predict when maintenance should occur.

### Evidence

1. Copy of relevant section of maintenance strategy.
2. Copy of maintenance logs.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management WAT 16 – Water recycling

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of total water consumption is from alternative supplies (greywater/rainwater)?

### Aim

To encourage the use of alternative water supplies in order to reduce the demand for mains supplied fresh water.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≥1 to <25%
2	≥25 to <50%
3	≥50 to <75%
4	≥75%

### Assessment criteria

1. Alternative water supplies include water that is treated prior to reuse and water that is not treated prior to reuse.
2. Both rainwater and greywater can be considered as alternative water supplies.
3. Other water sources can be used to meet the aim of the credit as long as the alternative water supply is used to reduce demand of mains fed fresh water supply for unregulated water uses.

### Evidence

Either:

1. Calculations (based on metered data for both mains and alternative supplies) to demonstrate the percentage of water consumption obtained from alternative supplies.

Or

2. Meter readings for both mains and alternative supplies to allow assessor to calculate percentage of water from alternative supplies.

## Additional information

-

## Building Management WAT 17 – Aspects and impacts

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is non-mains water extraction metered and monitored to avoid over-extraction?

### Aim

To avoid over extraction of the water table.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No water is extracted
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. It is essential that reliable metering provides a record of how much water is taken, metering will allow, and will thus illustrate:
  - a) Catchments are accurately balanced against overall requirements, to maintain a healthy water environment
  - b) Spare resources are allocated to new/future abstractions
  - c) Equitable payments can be set
  - d) Assurance that licence conditions are being adhered to

### Evidence

1. Evidence of monitoring data
2. If possible, copy of policy which stipulates monitoring is to take place

### Additional information

-

# Materials

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAT 08	Condition survey	4
MAT 09	Sustainable procurement policy	2
MAT 10	Sustainable procurement	4
MAT 11	Risk management	2
MAT 12	Risk management	2
MAT 13	Emergency plan	4
MAT 14	Hazard management	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>20</b>

## Building Management MAT 08 – Condition survey

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Where a condition survey has been carried out, who was the responsible party for completing it?

### Aim

To ensure that a competent party carries out a condition survey.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No condition survey has been carried out
1	Carried out by the building management personnel
2	Carried out by building management following third party approved procedures
3	Carried out by an independent third party
4	Carried out by an independent chartered building surveyor
4	The asset is less than 5 years old and no condition survey has been carried out
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. The responsible party/person that carries out the condition surveys must be suitably trained and experienced. Competent persons include:
  - a) Facilities management/building management staff
  - a) Civil engineers or other relevant engineering disciplines
  - b) Architects
  - c) Chartered surveyors
  - d) Members of institutions whom have undergone appropriate due diligence or training to conduct condition surveys

### Evidence

1. Copy of the section/page of the condition survey stating the name and organisation (including third party certification where available) of the party that carried out the condition survey.

2. Information regarding relevant qualifications and experience of the person who has undertaken the condition survey.
3. Assets that are less than 5 years old will require appropriate public records of property registration to demonstrate the building's age.

### **Additional information**

-

## Building Management MAT 09 – Sustainable procurement policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is an environmental/sustainable procurement policy in place with regards to the maintenance, refurbishment and operation of the building that covers materials, products, and services?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the implementation of formal environmental policies that address, and aim to reduce organisational purchases of materials, products and services with a high environmental impact.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. An environmental purchasing policy should cover consumables and replacement equipment. The policy should have also been endorsed at senior management level.
2. The asset owner demonstrates (i.e. through examples) how the policy is implemented, either through general organisational operation, or project related initiatives and management strategies.
3. All timber or timber based products that is procured should be 'Legally harvested and Legally traded timber' as outlined in the additional information section.

### Evidence

1. A copy of the environmental/sustainable purchasing policy.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Legally harvested timber:** timber that has been harvested in accordance with the applicable legislation in the country of harvest.

**Legally traded timber:** timber that is legally traded means timber or products derived from timber were:

1. Exported in compliance with exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
2. Imported in compliance with importing country laws governing the import of timber and timber products, including payment of any import taxes, duties, or levies or not in contravention of exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
3. Traded in compliance with legislation related to the convention on international trade in endangered species (CITES) where applicable.

## Building Management MAT 10 – Sustainable procurement

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What initiatives are included in the scope of the environmental/sustainable procurement policy?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage measures which ensure that environmental impacts associated with the management of the building are minimised by setting environmental standards for procurement of goods and services.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option (tick where appropriate)	
0	Question not answered	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Don't know	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	No policy in place	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	The asset owner works with the supply chain to help reduce environmental impact of procurements	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Environmental impacts of materials are taken into account with targets to reduce negative impacts	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	CO <sub>2</sub> emissions arising from transport of materials are taken into account and targets set to reduce CO <sub>2</sub> emissions	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	The asset owner has targets to reduce the consumption of hazardous materials	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

1. The policy should be endorsed at senior management level.

### Evidence

1. A copy of the policy highlighting the relevant clauses.
2. Confirmation of the name/position of the top level manager with ownership and responsibility for implementation.
3. Specific examples that demonstrate compliance with the policy objectives.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management MAT 11 – Risk management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Has a fire risk assessment been carried out?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the execution of a fire risk assessment that goes beyond statutory requirements and identifies fire risks to property and the environment and sets out procedures to keep these impacts to a minimum as far as practicable.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. For the purposes of this issue, the fire risk assessment should address property and the environment.
2. A fire risk assessment must be carried out by a competent person. A competent person is 'a person with enough training and experience or knowledge and other qualities to enable them properly to assist in undertaking the preventative and protective measures'. For more complex assessments, the necessary competency may not reside with a single individual, but will instead be provided by a team, including those with relevant local knowledge.
3. A fire risk assessment should be carried out in accordance with a recognised methodology, e.g. PAS 79 Fire risk assessment – Guidance and a recommended methodology.

### Evidence

1. Copy of most recent fire risk assessments carried out.
2. Documentation (such as a certificate) to prove competence of the person undertaking the fire risk assessment.
3. Information regarding relevant qualifications and experience of the person who has undertaken the fire risk assessment.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management MAT 12 – Risk management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is there a fire manager or other member of staff in place who manages, monitors and initiates reviews of the relevant procedures as identified in the fire risk assessment?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage proactive fire risk assessment practices which help ensure the risk of fire within the asset is kept to a minimum as far as practicable.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Fire risks identified through an appropriate fire risk assessments should be continuously monitored in order to make sure that the risks of fire are kept to minimum, as far as is practicable. Competent persons should be involved in setting out and undertaking routine fire safety checks throughout the site.
2. Procedures as identified in the fire risk assessment should at least be reviewed annually AND when changes are made to the building.
3. If necessary, evidence provided demonstrates involvement of the fire service and/or accredited third party whom is competent.

### Evidence

1. Evidence provided for Building Management MAT10 – Risk Management.
2. Evidence of fire safety checking through documentation and recent examples.
3. If necessary, evidence of third party approval or fire service involvement.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management MAT 13 – Emergency plan

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is there an emergency plan in place that includes strategies for the protection of property and/or the environment?

### Aim

To encourage fire risk/emergency plans that go beyond statutory requirements and aim to protect property and the environment in addition to people.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes, protection of property
4	Yes, protection of property and environmental impacts

### Assessment criteria

1. For the purposes of this issue, the emergency plan should address property and/or the environment.
2. In simple premises, the emergency plan may be no more than a fire action notice.
3. In multi-occupied and more complex premises, the emergency plan will need to be more detailed and compiled only after consultation with other responsible people, e.g. owners or other employees, who have control (or some control) over the building.
4. A complex building will usually require trained staff to assist other occupants who are not necessarily familiar with the building or its safety systems.
5. The following should at least be included or taken into consideration when developing an emergency plan:
  - a) Providing an accessible means of escape solution should be an integral part of the fire safety management process.
  - b) Fire safety management should take into account the full range of people who might use the premises, paying particular attention to the needs of people with physical or mental impairments.
  - c) When providing means of escape for a building, intervention and assistance by the fire and rescue services should not be assumed or relied upon.

- d) In addition to life safety considerations, the fire safety plan may also include:
- i. Mitigation of potential environmental impacts of fire (e.g. water run-off)
  - ii. Risk management, business continuity, contingency planning, restart planning
  - iii. Contingency plans for salvage and damage control

## **Evidence**

1. A copy of the fire risk/emergency plan with sections which relate to the protection of building and contents identified.

## **Additional information**

-

## Building Management MAT 14 – Hazard management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is a policy to enhance the protection of the asset from risks arising from natural hazards in place?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage policies that are in place to reduce risk of damage from natural hazards.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. A policy to enhance the protection of the asset from risks arising from **relevant** natural hazards should be in place.
2. Relevant natural hazard risks should have been identified and a policy written by competent individuals/relevant organisations.
3. If there is no perceived threat from natural hazards this must be outlined in the natural risk policy.
4. Natural hazards are natural processes or phenomena occurring in the biosphere or crust that may constitute a damaging event. The list below is not intended to be exhaustive, but provides an indication of the type of hazards that should be considered to meet the definition. Other natural hazards may be relevant under this issue. Relevance will be dependent on local geography, geology, hydrology and climate factors and the assessor should be satisfied that appropriate local expertise has been sought by the client/design team to identify these fully:
  - a) Floods (addressed in Asset Performance POL 02 – Flood risk assessment )
  - b) Natural disasters of geological origin such as volcanic eruptions, earthquakes and landslides
  - c) Natural disasters of climatic or meteorological origin such as droughts, avalanches, wave surges including tsunamis and tidal waves, and wind storms including cyclones, hurricanes, tornadoes, tropical storms, and typhoons
  - d) Wildfires

### Evidence

1. A copy of the natural hazard risk policy/strategy.

2. Copy of qualification of person that has written the natural hazard risk policy.

## **Additional information**

### **Relevant definitions**

**Competent individual:** an individual (or individuals) with relevant technical and professional experience suitable to:

- a) Determine the potential for natural hazards in the region of the development
- b) Determine the likely impacts on the site, building and locality
- c) Subsequently identify appropriate mitigation measures

This (or these) individual(s) should practice to and abide by a professional code of conduct or similar.

## Waste

The waste category is not assessed within Part 2 of a BREEAM In-Use assessment.

# Land Use and Ecology

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
LE 03	Ecology report	4
LE 04	Biodiversity action plan	4
LE 05	External landscaping/maintenance	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>10</b>

## Building Management LE 03 – Ecology report

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Has an ecology report been developed?

### Aim

Encouraging organisations to establish the ecological value of their asset/site and improve the ecological value based on recommendations that have been made by a suitably qualified ecologist.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, none of the suggested improvements have been implemented
2	Yes, no ecology has been identified on site
2	Yes, and major improvements have been implemented
4	Yes, and all improvements have been implemented
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

- The ecology report detailing the outcomes of the ecology survey can be written by an ecologist who does not meet the Suitable Qualified Ecologist (SQE) criteria provided that it has been reviewed by a SQE which must have found it to be:
  - Representing sound industry practice
  - Written objectively (avoiding invalid biased and exaggerated statements)
  - Appropriate given the local site conditions and scope of works proposed
- The ecologist must base their findings on data collected from a site visit conducted at appropriate time(s) of the year, when different plant and animal species are evident.
- An SQE should be independent of the organisation.

### Evidence

- Copy of ecology survey, including report.

2. Evidence that the ecology survey was carried out by a competent individual such as: copies of relevant documents, qualifications, CV or industry membership.

## **Additional information**

### **Relevant definitions**

**Suitably Qualified Ecologist:** An individual achieving all the following items can be considered to be “suitably qualified” for the purposes of a BREEAM In-Use International assessment:

- a) Holds a degree or equivalent qualification in ecology or in a related subject comprising a significant ecology component.
- b) Is a practising ecologist, with a minimum of three years relevant experience (within the last five years). Such experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of factors affecting ecology in relation to construction and the built environment; including, acting in an advisory capacity to provide recommendations for ecological protection, enhancement and mitigation measures. The relevant experience must relate to the country that the assessment is being carried out in.

## Building Management LE 04 – Biodiversity action plan

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is a biodiversity action plan in place that sets specific targets to enhance the ecological value of the site?

### Aim

To encourage organisations to develop a biodiversity action plan based on the outcomes of the ecology survey that set targets and is reviewed on a regular basis in order to enable assets to maintain and enhance the ecological value of the site.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes
4	Not applicable, the ecology survey determined that there was no biodiversity on site

### Assessment criteria

- A Biodiversity Action Plan (BAP) should set targets that are:
  - Specific to the asset/site
  - Measurable and achievable
  - Realistic and time bound
- The BAP should be underpinned by the findings of the site ecology survey, which has been undertaken by a competent person.
- A competent person in this instance is a suitably qualified ecologist (SQE).
- The BAP should be reviewed at least when large changes to the asset/site are made.
- The BAP should link to local and regional biodiversity requirements in accordance with the Convention on Biological Diversity where applicable.

### Evidence

- Copy of biodiversity plan/strategy.
- Evidence that the plan/strategy was developed by a competent individual such as copies of relevant documents, qualifications, CV or industry membership.

## Additional information

### Other information

Convention on Biological Diversity – For more information regarding this please visit the official website: <http://www.cbd.int/convention/>

## Building Management LE 05 – External landscaping/maintenance

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is there a policy/plan in place to maintain and improve the ecological value of the asset and its immediate site?

### Aim

To encourage organisations to develop a policy/plan that maintains and improves the ecological value of the asset and its immediate site.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Organisations responsible for site landscaping should either,
  - a) Have their own policies that stipulate that the work they undertake will maintain or enhance the ecological value on site.
  - OR
  - b) Have contractual agreements with building management/building owner that stipulate that the work they undertake will maintain or enhance the ecological value on site.
2. The policy/plan should consist of (but is not limited to):
  - a) Landscaping
  - b) Integrated pest management
  - c) Cleaning of façade, landscaping and hardscaping
  - d) Planting/installation of features to enhance flora and fauna on site

### Evidence

1. Copy of relevant policy or contractual agreement.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Integrated Pest Management (IPM)** is a method of controlling pests by prevention, monitoring, and control. This method of pest control offers the opportunity to eliminate or drastically reduce the use of pesticides, and to minimise the toxicity of and exposure to any products which are used.

### Other information

External landscaping and maintenance plans would be informed by the outcomes of the ecological survey and biodiversity action plan. This will ensure that the ecological value of the site has been established and that the correct measures and plans are in place to ensure that the ecological value will be maintained.

# Pollution

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
POL 07	Night time light pollution	4
POL 08	Chemical storage	4
POL 09	Bunding	2
POL 10	Light-liquid separators	2
POL 11	Refrigerants	2
POL 12	Land contamination mitigation	4
POL 13	Emergency preparedness and response	2
POL 14	Complaints procedure	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>24</b>

## Building Management POL 07 – Night time light pollution

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are steps taken to minimise night time light pollution arising from internal and external lighting?

### Aim

To ensure that internal and external lighting is concentrated in the appropriate areas and that upward lighting is minimised, reducing unnecessary light pollution, and nuisance to neighbouring properties.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes, routine checks and monitoring is performed by building/facility management
4	Yes, a light pollution survey has been conducted by a third party and all recommendations have been fully implemented

### Assessment criteria

1. A light pollution survey should (at least) be undertaken:
  - a) when significant changes are made to the building and/or the site
  - b) once every 4 years
2. Internal and external lighting should be designed to reduce light pollution. Design measures could include for example:
  - a) Selecting fittings that focus light onto desired areas only
  - b) Using light sources with the minimum intensity required to achieve desired luminosity levels
  - c) Internal and external lighting can be automatically switched off between 23:00hrs and 06:00hrs. Options to achieve this are, but are not limited to:
    - i. Providing a timer for all internal and external lighting set to the appropriate hours
    - ii. By formal requirements in contracts for staff that is last to leave occupied spaces within the asset
3. If there is no external lighting on or around the assessed development, the requirements only apply to internal lighting.
4. Where light fittings are specified to comply with specific security standards and these conflict with these BREEAM In-Use criteria they can be excluded from the assessment of this issue. In these

circumstances the assessor must obtain evidence confirming that the specific security standards are applicable to the assessed development.

5. Where a different curfew time applies for other reasons (e.g. noise control), consideration should be given to the co-ordination of the curfews, e.g. allowing sufficient time of operation for the lighting after the conclusion of the activity to facilitate crowd dispersal, particularly where large numbers of spectators are involved.
6. Where non security lighting is considered to be essential between 23:00hrs and 06:00hrs, i.e. for buildings which open/operate between these times, the lighting system is able to automatically switch to lower levels of lighting recommended for lighting during these hours (or provide these lower levels at all times).
7. Flush stud lights used for safety purposes in vehicle manoeuvring areas may be excluded from the assessment.

## **Evidence**

1. Photographic evidence confirming that external luminaires are designed to restrict upward light and light spill.
2. Confirmation that lighting is switched off after a set time.
3. Copies of sections of light pollution survey specifying results and recommendations.

## **Additional information**

-

## Building Management POL 08 – Chemical storage

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are all hazardous chemicals stored in areas with adequate containment to deal with  $\geq 110\%$  of the chemicals stored?

### Aim

To reduce the impact of a chemical leak/spill by ensuring that these areas remain effective in the event of a leak/spill

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Not applicable, there are no hazardous chemical stored in the asset
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Containment for spillage can come in the form of one mitigation measure or the combination of several. Mitigation measures can include, (but are not limited to):
  - a) Double skinned tanks
  - b) Drip trays
  - c) Non-permeable membranes in the room where tanks are located
  - d) Bunding

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of chemical storage.
2. Confirmation that facilities are appropriate to the area they serve.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management POL 09 – Bunding

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are bunded areas checked regularly to ensure that they remain effective?

### Aim

To maintain the effectiveness of any bunded areas.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No bunded areas required as no liquids requiring bunded storage are stored onsite
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- Where bunded areas are present internal checks are conducted at planned intervals to determine whether the bunded areas are being maintained to operate at optimum efficiency.

### Evidence

- Copy of log book or inspection schedule.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Bund:** a structure made of an impermeable material which forms a barrier to retain liquids.

## Building Management POL 10 – Light-liquid separators

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Does the scope of the maintenance policy cover light-liquid separators?

### Aim

To ensure light-liquid separators are maintained to operate as intended.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No light-liquid separators on site
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. Detailed inspection and maintenance requirements should be documented in the maintenance policy.

### Evidence

1. Copy of maintenance policy highlighting the light-liquid separator maintenance schedule.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Light-liquid separators** are a vessel, as part of a surface water drainage system, into which potentially contaminated waste water will flow and where light liquids are separated from the waste water by means of gravity and/or coalescence, and retained.

## Building Management POL 11 – Refrigerants

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is a strategy and timetable to replace refrigerants with low environmental impact alternatives in place?

### Aim

To reduce the impact of refrigerants on the environment.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No as refrigerants have been replaced with low environmental impact alternatives/were never used
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- The strategy needs to cover:
  - Equipment containing refrigerants which is to be replaced
  - What low environmental impact refrigerant the existing refrigerant is to be replaced with
  - The timescale over which this is to be delivered
- The strategy should cover air conditioning and refrigeration systems equipment within the building for the following uses, including:
  - Comfort cooling
  - Cold storage, including commercial food/drink display cabinets but excluding domestic white goods e.g. fridges and freezers
  - Process based cooling loads e.g. servers/I.T equipment
- Small multiple hermetic systems are exempt; where the refrigerant charge in each unit is less than 5kg.
- If replacement has already taken place then full credits can be awarded.

### Evidence

- Copy of the strategy/objectives relating to replacing refrigerants.

## Additional information

### Other information

Table 14 outlines examples of refrigerants with low Global Warming Potential (GWP).

Table 14: Examples of refrigerants with a low GWP potential

R-Number	Chemical name	GWP (100-yr)
R-30	Dichloromethane	9
R-170	Ethane	3
R-290	Propane	3
R-600	Butane	3
R-600a	Isobutane	3
R-702	Hydrogen	5.8
R-717	Ammonia	0
R-718	Water	<1
R-729	Air (Nitrogen, oxygen, argon)	0
R-744	Carbon dioxide	1
R1216	Ethylene	3
R-1234yf	2,3,3,3-Tetrafluoropropene	<1
R-1270	Propylene	3

Sources: The United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) '2010 Report of the Refrigeration, Air-conditioning and Heat Pumps Technical Options Committee'

EN 378-1:2008+A2:2012: Refrigerating systems and heat pumps - Safety and environmental requirements. Part 1: Basic requirements, definitions, classification and selection criteria - Annex E.

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 5th Assessment Report, Chapter 8, 'Anthropogenic and Natural Radiative Forcing', 2013

'Global environmental impacts of the hydrogen economy', Derwent *et al*, Int. J. Nuclear Hydrogen Production and Application, Vol. 1, No. 1, 2006

## Building Management POL 12 – Land contamination mitigation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Has an assessment of the site been performed to check for potential land contamination issues (e.g. environmental due diligence, desk study, intrusive investigation, etc.)?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage actions taken which prevent/reduce risk of the site having a negative impact on the surrounding environment.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	Yes, and all contamination issues have been addressed
4	Yes, no contamination issues have been found

### Assessment criteria

1. For 2 credits: A contaminated land specialist's site investigation should identify:
  - a) any areas of contamination and the degree of contamination
  - b) the contaminant sources/types
  - c) the options for remediating sources of pollution which present unacceptable risk to the site and surrounding environment
2. For 4 credits, in addition to the above, the following must apply: Any areas of contamination identified in the contaminated land site investigation have been remediated in accordance with the remediation strategy and its implementation plan.

### Evidence

1. Copy of the land specialist's contamination report.
2. A copy of the professional report (or relevant sections of the report) confirming:
  - a) Description of the remedial works undertaken

- b) Description of the pollution linkages addressed (this may not be applicable where the contaminant is a non-native invasive plant species)

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Contaminant** is defined as any solid, liquid or gaseous material in, or on the ground to be covered by the building, which is classed as a hazard and therefore presents an unacceptable risk to human health and the environment. The definition also includes land significantly infested by non-native invasive plant species.

**Non-native invasive plant species** are non-indigenous species that adversely affect the habitats they invade economically, environmentally or ecologically. Further information on control and disposal together with legislative requirements relating to such species should be obtained from the relevant environmental body.

**A relevant pollutant linkage** is one that has been identified during the risk assessment stage as representing unacceptable risks to human health or the environment.

## Building Management POL 13 – Emergency preparedness and response

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is a response plan in place to deal with pollution incidents in line with national standards or best practice guidelines?

### Aim

To reduce the impact of any pollution incidents on the surrounding environment.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No pollution risks identified for asset
2	Yes
2	Not applicable as no sources of pollution are located on the site

### Assessment criteria

1. A response plan outlining emergency response procedures for dealing with potential pollution incidents should be in place. Sources of potential pollution include (but are not limited to):
  - a) Fuel storage (e.g. diesel for emergency back-up generators)
  - b) Refrigerants that are stored on site
2. The response plan should be periodically reviewed, especially after the occurrence of any accidents or emergency situations.
3. Where practical, the response procedures should be tested periodically.

### Evidence

1. Copy of the response plan outlining the incident response procedures.
2. Records of any testing of emergency response procedures.

### Additional information

-

## Building Management POL 14 – Complaints procedure

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is there a complaints procedure in place that deals with any issues relating to the asset and associated operations (e.g. noise, odour, and light)?

### Aim

To ensure any issues affecting building users or occupiers in the surrounding areas can be raised through a formal route and dealt with effectively.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. The complaints procedure should detail how to deal with any complaints quickly and impartially.

### Evidence

1. Copy of relevant complaints procedure

### Additional information

-

# Part 3: Occupier Management

# Management

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAN 14	Environmental management policy	4
MAN 15	Environmental management issues	16
MAN 16	Environmental management implementation	13
MAN 17	Environmental objectives	4
MAN 18	Organisational performance review	2
MAN 19	Sustainability report	3
MAN 20	Green lease	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>46</b>

## Occupier Management MAN 14 – Environmental management policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	Yes

### Question

Is there an environmental management policy and/or procedure in place?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the implementation of a formal environmental management policy in which the intent and objectives to manage environmental activities are outlined and responsibilities allocated.

### Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Pass' rating there must be evidence that an environmental policy and/or procedure is under development.
2. To gain a 'Very Good' rating there must be evidence that an environmental policy and/or procedure is in place and has been endorsed by the board of directors/senior management.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	There is no environmental policy and/or procedure
1	An environmental policy and/or procedure is under development
2	An environmental policy and/or procedure is under development with a ≤ 2 year endorsement plan
3	An environmental policy and/or procedure is in place and has been endorsed by the board of directors/senior management
4	An environmental policy and/or procedure has been developed with stakeholders' consultation in compliance with the guidance given in ISO 14001, or equivalent and stakeholders' comments have been integrated
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. The environmental management policy should:
  - a) Be appropriate to the nature, scale and environmental impacts of an organisations activities, products and services

- b) Include a commitment to continual improvement and prevention of pollution
- c) Include a commitment to comply with applicable legal requirements and with other requirements which relate to an organisations specific environmental aspects
- d) Install a framework for setting and reviewing environmental objectives and targets
- e) Be documented, implemented and maintained
- f) Is communicated to all persons working for or on behalf of the organisation

## Evidence

1. Document ref number and issue number.
2. For 1 credit: Copy of the confirmation that the environmental management policy and/or procedure is being developed with the proposed timing and amount currently.
3. For 2 credits: Copy of the letter from client confirming an environmental strategy is in place.
4. For 3 credits: A copy of the environmental management policy and / or relevant procedures signed by top management.
5. For 4 credits: Copy of ISO 14001, or equivalent third party certification document.

## Additional information

### Other information

See: EN ISO 14001: 2004 “*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*” (ISO 14001:2004 A.2 Environmental Policy)

The environmental policy is the driver for implementing and improving an organisation’s environmental management so that it can maintain and/or improve its environmental performance. A policy should therefore reflect commitment of top management to comply with applicable legal requirements, to prevent pollution and to continually improve.

## Occupier Management MAN 15 – Environmental management issues

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
16	Yes

### Question

Which of the following issues do the environmental management arrangements specifically measure/manage?

### Aim

To encourage the management of a broad range of environmental issues.

### Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Good' rating, environmental management arrangements that measure and monitor energy consumption, energy efficiency and supply including targets for reduction of energy consumption contained within an energy plan, AND waste reduction and management must be in place within the occupying organisation.
2. In addition to point 1, to gain a 'Very Good' rating, environmental management arrangements are in place to measure and monitor Pollution reductions.

### Available credits

Issue	Credits
Energy consumption, energy efficiency and supply including targets for reduction of energy consumption contained within an energy plan	1
Water consumption, efficiency and wastage	1
Waste reduction and management	1
Pollution reduction/control	1
Reductions in the carbon footprint of business travel	1
Responsible purchasing of products and services	1
Reductions in the carbon footprint of staff commuting	1
Decision processes which actively promote more sustainable purchasing practices including consideration of cost, time and quality	1
Decision processes which address environmental and sustainability issues alongside cost, time and quality when planning capital expenditure	1
Decision processes which address environmental and sustainability issues alongside cost, time and quality when planning accommodation requirements	1

Issue	Credits
Measurements of company carbon footprint against a verifiable system in kgCO <sub>2</sub> /m <sup>2</sup>	1
Land use, ecology and biodiversity	1
Environmental policy in use as a minimum standard for all sub-contractors	1
Policy to offset carbon emission	1
Promotion of flexible working arrangements to reduce unnecessary travel	1
Promotion of home working arrangements to reduce unnecessary travel	1
Other	-

## Assessment criteria

1. An organisation should identify the environmental aspects within the scope of its business operations, taking into account the inputs and outputs associated (intended and unintended) with its activities. This includes products and services, planned or new developments, or new or modified activities for example.
2. An organisation should establish, implement and maintain procedures(s) that are documented and kept up to date, ensuring that significant environmental aspects are taken into account in establishing, implementing and maintaining appropriate environmental management.
3. An organisation should consider aspects that it can influence, such as those related to goods and services used by the organisation and those related to products and services that it provides.

## Evidence

1. Copy of the Environmental Management policy with relevant sections highlighted.

## Additional information

### Other information

See: EN ISO 14001: 2004 “*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*” (ISO 14001:2004 A.3.1 Environmental aspects)

## Occupier Management MAN 16 – Environmental management implementation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
13	No

### Question

To what degree have the environmental management arrangements been implemented and improvements been managed?

### Aim

To encourage the implementation of environmental management arrangements throughout the organisation.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
1	All environmental aspects and all prevention policies have been identified and defined	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	All environmental issues that may arise from within the asset have been regularly reviewed.	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Management arrangements include procedures to incorporate feedback from staff, clients and other stakeholders	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the environmental policies, objectives and targets	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Formal, regular training is provided for key environmental management staff	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Where no EMS is in place, an EMS is under development	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	EMS includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc.	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	An Environmental management system (EMS) has been in place for at least 3 years covering activities which are related to the building/site under assessment in accordance with the principles of ISO 14001 and has an independent third party audit/certification	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

## Assessment criteria

1. Management should ensure the availability of resources essential to establish, implement, maintain and improve the environmental management policy.
2. Appropriate roles, responsibilities and authorities should be defined, documented and communicated in order to facilitate effective environmental management. As part of this commitment, top management should designate a specific management representative(s) with defined responsibility and authority for implementing the environmental management system.
3. There should be regular reporting to top management on the performance of the environmental management system for review, including recommendations for improvement.
4. The organisation should identify the awareness, knowledge, understanding and skills needed by any person with responsibility and authority to perform tasks relating to environmental management on its behalf if necessary. Competence should be measured on the basis of appropriate education, training and experience, and associated records shall be retained.
5. The organisation should ensure that employees are aware of the organisation's environmental policy and environmental management system as well as the environmental aspects of the organisation's activities, products and services that could be affected by their work.
6. Organisations should have implemented procedures for receiving, documenting and responding to relevant communications from interested parties.
7. When considering external communication about environmental aspects, organisations should take into consideration the views and information needs of all interested parties. Where organisations elect to communicate externally, the organisation should establish a procedure to do so. Methods of external communication can include annual reports, newsletters, websites and community meetings.

## Evidence

1. Staff interviews.
2. Copy of the environmental management agreement.
3. Copy of EMS surveillance audit report(s) conduct by appropriate third party organisation (if applicable).
4. Copy of certificate reference number (if applicable).
5. Records and certificates of employee(s) qualifications and/or relevant training (if applicable).
6. Copy of benchmark data used (if applicable).
7. Evidence of Management review(s); minutes, action plans (if applicable).

## Additional information

### Other information

See: EN ISO 14001: 2004 "*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*" (ISO 14001:2004 A.4 Implementation and operation)

## Occupier Management MAN 17 – Environmental objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	Yes

### Question

In the last calendar year, what percentage of environmental objectives were achieved?

### Aim

To encourage and recognise the continual improvement of environmental performance.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥ 50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must have a minimum of 6 set targets within the Environmental Management Policy in order to achieve any credits.
2. Environmental objectives are to be established and maintained at relevant functions and levels within the organisation. These should be specific and measurable wherever practicable, and consistent with the environmental policy, including the commitments to prevention of pollution, compliance with applicable legal requirements, and continual improvement.
3. Organisations should be able to demonstrate that the credit criteria has been met by providing up to date records of environmental impacts on site which have been targeted and met.
4. Targets should address major relevant environmental impacts for which the organisation is responsible, such as those identified in Environmental Management Policy.
5. Organisations should be able to demonstrate how they have achieved reductions.

### Evidence

1. Copy of documented environmental objectives.
2. Internal audit reports measuring environmental performance.
3. Management Review Minutes.
4. Organisational Corporate Sustainability Report, documenting performance against objectives.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

The programme for establishing objectives should include, where appropriate and practical, consideration of planning, design, production, marketing, and disposal stages. This can be undertaken for both current and new activities, products or services. For products, this can address design, materials, production processes, use and ultimate disposal. For installations or significant modifications of processes, this can address planning, design, construction, commissioning, operation and, at the appropriate time determined by the organisation, decommissioning.

## Occupier Management MAN 18 – Organisational performance review

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

How often is a review of the organisational performance against the environmental objectives carried out by the board of directors/senior management?

### Aim

To encourage the development and review of environmental objectives to continually improve organisational performance.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Never
0	Infrequently
1	At least annually
2	At least twice a year

### Assessment criteria

1. Reviews should include, but are not limited to:
  - a) Results of evaluations of compliance with legal requirements.
  - b) Communication(s) from external interested parties, including complaints.
  - c) The environmental performance of the organisation.
  - d) Performance against objectives and targets.
  - e) Follow-up actions from previous reviews.
  - f) Changing circumstances, including developments in legal and other requirements related to the organisations environmental impacts.
  - g) Recommendations for improvement.
2. A management review should cover the scope of the environmental management system, although not all elements of the environmental system need to be reviewed at once and the review process may take place over a period of time.

## Evidence

1. Review minutes, indicating agreed recommendations for improvement.
2. Results of review and changes made.

## Additional information

-

## Occupier Management MAN 19 – Sustainability report

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	Yes

### Question

Does the organisation produce a sustainability/Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) report?

### Aim

To ensure transparent communication of social, economic and environmental performance.

### Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Good' rating the occupying organisation must provide appropriate evidence that a CSR report exists but hasn't been independently verified.
2. To gain a 'Very Good' rating the occupying organisation must ensure that the CSR report has been independently verified by a third party assurance/verification body and is accessible to all internal and external stakeholders.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	No
1	Yes. Internal report which is not independently verified
2	Yes. Report is independently verified by a third party assurance/verification body and is accessible to all internal and external stakeholders
3	Yes. Report conforms to the Global Reporting Initiative (GRI) guidelines and it is independently verified by a third party assurance/verification body and is accessible to all internal and external stakeholders
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. The sustainability/CSR report should provide a balanced and reasonable representation of the sustainability performance of the reporting organisation – covering both positive and negative issues.
2. The report should have been written based on accurate, verifiable data, collected by the organisation over the period of one year. A report which covers a period of more than 1 year is compliant when it includes data for each yearly interval.

## Evidence

1. Copy of sustainability report with sections about the performance of the organisation against sustainability objectives and targets.
2. Name of third party organisation whom independently verified report (if applicable)
3. Review organisation website for electronic copy of publication.

## Additional information

### Other information

The standardised content for International Sustainability/Corporate Social Responsibility Reports is documented by the Global Reporting Initiative (GRI). The GRI express that organisations aiming to report on sustainability performance must report on their Social, Economic and Environmental performance indicators.

## Occupier Management MAN 20 – Green lease

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Are tenants engaged and actively involved in a green lease with their landlord?

### Aim

To ensure the collaboration between building owners and occupiers, in order to improve the environmental performance of the building.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes (with qualitative targets)
4	Yes (with qualitative and quantitative targets on at least lighting and energy)
4	Not applicable, the building is owner-occupied

### Assessment criteria

1. See compliance requirement from Building Management MAN 11 – Green lease.

### Evidence

1. Copy of green lease agreement.

### Additional information

-

# Health and Wellbeing

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
HEA 25	Occupier satisfaction	10
HEA 26	Health and wellbeing management targets	57
HEA 27	Health and wellbeing management objectives	4
HEA 28	View out	2
HEA 29	Communal rest areas	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>75</b>

## Occupier Management HEA 25 – Occupier satisfaction

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
10	Yes

### Question

Are the following key issues measured, monitored, and managed?

### Aim

To ensure that staff capabilities, prospects and wellbeing are enhanced by the organisation.

### Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Good' rating the occupying organisation is required to measure, monitor and manage the skills and capabilities of employees.
2. In addition to point 1, to gain a 'Very Good' rating the occupying organisation is required to measure, monitor and manage workplace comfort.
3. In addition to point 1 and point 2, to gain an 'Excellent' rating the occupying organisation is required to measure, monitor and manage the continual professional development of their employees.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
1	Skills and capabilities of staff	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Social interaction/team building	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Workplace comfort	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Productivity	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Staff satisfaction	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Continual professional development	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Management effectiveness	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

1. Measuring and monitoring of these aspects should be done using a formal process; this could include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Regular meetings/reviews
  - b) Questionnaires
  - c) Auditing

d) Staff event days

## **Evidence**

1. Description of how employees' records are held locally. Assessors must verify that these records are updated when new employees are hired or when employees leave.
2. Copy of the building occupants satisfaction feedback forms, procedure and/or survey.
3. Minutes from employee meetings.
4. Description of annual Professional Development Review (PDR). This should include the date the review is undertaken, a copy of the PDR structure and how PDRs are communicated to staff.
5. Notes from staff interviews conducted.

## **Additional information**

-

## Occupier Management HEA 26 – Health and wellbeing management targets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
57	No

### Question

Are management arrangements that set health and wellbeing targets and monitor implementation?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage management arrangements that monitor and set relevant health and wellbeing targets aimed at improving health and wellbeing for all staff.

### Available credits

Answer option	Credits
Scope and objectives are defined	1
Health and wellbeing issues/concerns of staff are evaluated and recorded	1
Changes in health and wellbeing issues/concerns of staff are monitored and reported	1
Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed	1
Occupant satisfaction surveys are carried out at least annually	1
Customers/visitor feedback mechanisms are in place	1
Mechanisms are included to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy	1
Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the health, wellbeing and safety policies, objectives and targets	1
Signs, notices and posters are displayed in appropriate locations to highlight areas of risk to health and safety	1
Awareness seminars / training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding health and wellbeing and safety	1
Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for health, safety and wellbeing management	1
Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available (including workplace comfort and human resource management)	1
Certification achieved against a people management standard tailored to help achieve business objectives	1

Answer option	Credits
An environmental management system (EMS) that includes procedures to review position against appropriate peer group through verified published reporting, benchmarking etc.	1
Regular communication is carried out with staff covering health, safety and wellbeing issues (i.e. through newssheets, meetings, posters, published statistics etc.)	1
A staff mentoring/support system is in place which is independent of staff performance	1
Initiatives to minimise health risks and promote occupant wellbeing on site/building/area assessed are undertaken (in line with the appropriate annex)*	41*
Other	0

\*Annex section on page 397

## Annex

The Health and Wellbeing initiatives annex lists several in house initiatives that might be utilised by the organisation in order to meet the aims of this section.

## Assessment criteria

1. Management arrangements should be documented and available to view where applicable.
2. Management arrangements can be combined in a separate document or part of a wider management policy.

## Evidence

1. Copy of:
  - a) Health/user comfort agreements
  - b) Corporate rules
  - c) The incident directory, (accident/near miss book)
  - d) Tenant surveys, complaints, etc.
  - e) Appropriate certification to a people management standard
2. Copy of records regarding:
  - a) First aid/medical use
  - b) Health and safety on site
  - c) Health policy/user comfort
  - d) Employees who have completed relevant training
3. Assessor information for visual inspection of the internal organisational structure of the systems.
4. Date of last feedback.
5. Interviews with employees.

6. Agenda notes and schedules of forward-looking awareness/training sessions.
7. Credentials of the peer group.
8. Information on benchmarks used and date of benchmarks compared to the measured, which were published.
9. Relevant articles written in company newsletter(s).

### **Additional information**

-

## Occupier Management HEA 27 – Health and wellbeing management objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

In the last calendar year, what percentage of the health and wellbeing management objectives was achieved?

### Aim

To ensure health and wellbeing objectives are being met.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must have a minimum of 6 targets from Occupier Management HEA 26 – Health and wellbeing management targets in order to achieve any credits.

### Evidence

1. Copy of Health and Wellbeing objectives set for the calendar year
2. Review of company website, intranet, and newsletter(s) for publication of results
3. List of objectives indicating which ones have been achieved
4. Interviews with employees

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management HEA 28 – View out

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Is there a policy or practice in place to ensure that all workstations or desks for building users have an adequate external view out of a window?

### Aim

To enhance wellbeing within the work space by allowing building occupants to refocus their eyes from close work activities to reduce the risk of eyestrain or dry eyes.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- The view out should be through an external window providing a view of a landscape or buildings (rather than just sky) at seated eye level (1.2 – 1.3m) in the relevant building areas.
- A view in to an internal courtyard or atrium will comply provided the distance from the opening to the back wall of the courtyard/atrium is at least 10m (allowing enough distance for the eyes to refocus).
- The view cannot be an internal view across the room, as this is likely to become obstructed by partitions, filing cabinets etc.
- Roof lights and high level windows that do not provide an adequate view out do not meet the requirements.
- Relevant building areas should be within 7m distance of a window or permanent opening providing a view.
- The distance between the wall with the window/opening and nearest external solid object (i.e. buildings, screens walls/fences) should be  $\geq 10$ m.

### Evidence

- Photographic evidence.
- A copy of building floor plans illustrating the maximum distance to a view out of a window from the furthest work stations.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Relevant building areas** are areas within the asset where there are, or will be, workstations or desks for building users.

## Occupier Management HEA 29 – Communal rest areas

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

Are courses of action undertaken to ensure that indoor and outdoor rest spaces are not used for any other purpose? For example, not allowing a rest lounge to be used for meetings.

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the provision of rest areas for building users, which are not subsequently utilised for meetings at times of high demand.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. If an internal space is used as a communal rest area, the space is prohibited to be used as a meeting room.
2. Rest areas comply with Asset Performance HEA 07 – Indoor and/or outdoor space.

### Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of communal rest area(s), indicating signs/guidelines for area usage
2. Copies of policies that are available to staff on how communal rest areas are used.

### Additional information

-

# Energy

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
ENE 68	Energy policy	3
ENE 69	Energy management arrangements	51
ENE 70	Trends in energy performance data	2
ENE 71	Energy objectives	4
ENE 72	Energy savings	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>64</b>

## Occupier Management ENE 67 – Energy policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

### Question

Which of the following issues are considered within the energy policy?

### Aim

To ensure that there are a range of different energy management procedures/policies included in the energy policy.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
1	Reduction in energy demand	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Reduction in energy consumption	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Making further CO <sub>2</sub> reductions through the installation of Low and Zero Carbon technologies	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

- Reduction in energy demand can be achieved by reducing heating, cooling and small power energy demands. This can be done by, for example:
  - improving the building fabric
  - specifying low energy use light fittings
  - making amendments to cooling and heating temperatures
- Reduction in energy consumption can be achieved by meeting demand efficiently. This can be done by, for example, the installation of high efficiency boilers, fans and other building services equipment.
- Low and Zero Carbon (LZC) technologies are installations that are installed on-site, near-site or off-site that employ low or zero carbon sources to generate energy.
- The energy policy should be signed off at senior level and be actively implemented by dedicated staff members within the organisation.
- An energy policy can be a separate document or part of a wider energy management policy.

### Evidence

- Copy of relevant energy policy/strategy.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management ENE 68 – Energy management arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
51	Yes

### Question

To what extent do management arrangements set energy targets, and monitor implementation?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage management arrangements aimed at improving energy performance and usage awareness.

### Minimum standards

To gain 'Good' rating, energy consumption must be actively recorded and monitored.

### Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Scope and objectives are defined	1
Energy consumption is actively recorded and monitored	1
A locally or nationally recognised rating system is used to demonstrate operation consumption (such as those required by Energy Performance of Buildings Directive (EPBD) in Europe)	1
Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed	1
Management arrangements include procedures to monitor energy consumption	1
Awareness seminars/training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding energy management	1
Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the environmental policies, objectives and targets	1
Includes mechanisms to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy	1
Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for energy management	1
Improvement targets are set in an improvement strategy in line with the maintenance procedures	1

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Third party certification under an energy management standard such as ISO 50001:2011 which is either independently audited or certified	1
Energy saving initiatives are undertaken (in line with the appropriate annex)*	40*
Other	0

\*Annex section on page 398

## Annex

The energy initiatives annex lists several in house initiatives that might be utilised by the organisation in order to meet the aims of this section.

## Assessment criteria

1. Management arrangements should be documented and available to view where applicable.

## Evidence

1. Copy of the Energy Management Strategy.
2. Copy of annual utility bill for all energy uses.
3. Description of energy monitoring process.
4. Training/seminar materials from staff awareness events.
5. List of staff champions and interviews with a small sample of these people.
6. Description/copy of framework by which feedback is provided.
7. Training materials for staff responsible for energy management.
8. Evidence of improvement targets, evidence from Occupier Management ENE 70 – Energy objectives.
9. Third party documentation regarding energy management certification.
10. Where the building has been occupied for more than 3 years: copy of last two years of energy use records.
11. Where the building has been occupied for less than 3 years: copy of last 12 months of energy use records plus policies and procedures for on-going monitoring.

## Additional information

-

## Occupier Management ENE 69 – Trends in energy performance data

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

How often are the asset's energy performance data trends reviewed and compared with historical data and performance targets?

### Aim

Identifying short and long-term energy performance trends; highlighting opportunities for energy savings and any identifying changes in trends due to the implementation of energy management procedures.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Never
0	Infrequently
1	At least annually
2	At least twice a year

### Assessment criteria

1. All energy consumption on site should be measured and compared with historical data and performance targets.

### Evidence

1. Relevant spread sheets or energy benchmarking data identifying energy performance trends
2. Relevant documentation indicating what energy management procedures have been implemented and what effect these had on the energy performance trends.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management ENE 70 – Energy objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

In the last calendar year, what percentage of the energy objectives/targets was achieved?

### Aim

To ensure that energy objectives and targets are met; thereby encouraging and recognising the continual improvement of energy performance.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

### Assessment criteria

1. Targets must have been set for the previous year.

### Evidence

1. Company reports, declarations, such as the energy management strategy outlining energy targets.
2. Previous target setting documentation.
3. Copy of Energy Management Strategy (relating to set objectives/targets).

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management ENE 71 – Energy savings

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What were the asset's energy savings for the previous year, based on a benchmark of energy used 3 years ago?

### Aim

To encourage and recognise energy savings of the asset for various energy sources and systems; thereby reducing energy consumption of the asset.

### Available credits

A maximum of **4 credits** are awarded for providing the savings data for one or more of the following energy sources and systems:

Answer option	Credits awarded
Electricity savings of the asset from the mains supply in kWh/annum/m <sup>2</sup>	4 Credits
Natural gas savings by the asset in kWh/annum/m <sup>2</sup>	
Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) savings by the asset in kWh/annum/m <sup>2</sup>	
Oil savings by the asset in kWh/annum/m <sup>2</sup>	
Solid fuel savings by the asset in kWh/annum/m <sup>2</sup>	
District heating energy savings by the asset supplied in kWh/annum/m <sup>2</sup>	
District cooling energy savings by the asset supplied in kWh/annum/m <sup>2</sup>	
Increase of renewable energy generated onsite in kWh/annum/m <sup>2</sup>	

### Assessment criteria

1. The energy data that is provided must demonstrate year on year savings.

### Evidence

1. Evidence provided for previous questions concerning energy measurement is sufficient.

### Additional information

-

# Transport

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
TRA 05	Transport requirements	12
TRA 06	Transport management arrangements	59
TRA 07	Local public transport	4
TRA 08	Local amenities	4
TRA 09	Transport objectives	4
TRA 10	Transport impact of commuting	2
TRA 11	Transport impact of business travel	2
TRA 12	Transport impact of goods delivery	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>89</b>

## Occupier Management TRA 05 – Transport requirements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
12	Yes

### Question

Are the environmental impacts associated with the following transport requirements reduced/managed?

### Aim

To ensure that the environmental impacts of all travel to and from the asset are reduced/managed.

### Minimum standards

To gain an 'Excellent' rating the occupying organisation is required to reduce and manage the impact of staff commuting.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
2	Visitor/customer travel	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Deliveries	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Staff commuting	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Business travel	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

- Environmental impacts associated with the mentioned transport requirements should be established and reduced/managed. Environmental impacts can include, but are not limited to:
  - Fossil fuel use
  - Emissions related to transport
  - Pollution related to transport
  - Noise
- The management of the environmental impacts associated with the travel requirements can be combined in a separate document (travel plan) or part of a wider management policy.

### Evidence

- Copy of the organisation specific management arrangements related to the environmental impacts of the travel requirements.
- Copy of the site-specific transport survey/assessment,

3. Copy of travel policies/procedures.
4. Photographic evidence confirming installation of measures that support the management arrangements.

## **Additional information**

### **Relevant definitions**

**A travel plan** is a strategy for managing all travel and transport within an organisation, principally to increase choice and reduce reliance on the car by seeking to improve access to site or development by sustainable modes of transport. A travel plan contains both physical and behavioural measures to increase travel choices and reduce reliance on single occupancy car travel. A travel plan can be as simple or complex as the building and its operation/use requires.

## Occupier Management TRA 06 – Transport management arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
59	No

### Question

To what extent are transport management arrangements in place that allow monitoring against set targets?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage management aimed at reducing the effects of transport to the environment and increasing awareness of travel impacts.

### Available credits

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Scope and objectives are defined	1
Business travel impacts are measured and recorded	1
Staff commuting impacts are measured and recorded	1
Visitor / client travel impacts are measured and recorded	1
Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed	1
Business travel impacts are monitored	1
Staff commuting impacts are monitored	1
Visitor / client travel impacts are monitored	1
Staff are encouraged to follow the transport hierarchy to minimise carbon impacts of transport when selecting mode of travel	1
Initiatives are undertaken to minimise air-based business travel patterns	1
Financial incentives are provided to promote carbon efficient means of transport for staff	1
Carbon efficient means of transport are provided for staff and visitors	1
Awareness seminars / training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding minimisation and management of transport impacts	1

Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the transport policies, objectives and targets	1
Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for transport management	1
Includes mechanisms to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy	1
Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available	1
An environmental management system (EMS) that includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to transport	1
Deliveries are scheduled to minimise impacts on staff and surrounding environment	1
Initiatives are undertaken to minimise car-based travel patterns (in line with the appropriate annex)*	40*
Other	0

\*Annex section on page 400

## Annex

The transport initiatives annex lists several in house initiatives that might be utilised by the organisation in order to meet the aims of this section.

### Assessment criteria

1. Management arrangements should be documented and available to view where applicable.
2. The transport management arrangements can be combined in a separate document or part of a wider management policy.

### Evidence

1. A copy of the organisation specific management arrangements/Travel Plan, highlighting relevant clauses:
  - a) A copy of the site-specific transport survey/assessment
  - b) A copy of travel policies/procedures
  - c) Records demonstrating regular reviews of transport policy
  - d) Records demonstrating monitoring of relevant travel
  - e) Means of motivating staff, including evidence of incentives
  - f) Training material/dates and certificates for training completion
  - g) Interviews with staff
  - h) Information on deliveries to site
  - i) Photographic evidence
  - j) Visual inspection notes

## **Additional information**

-

## Occupier Management TRA 07 – Local public transport

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is there an agreement in place to liaise with local public transport operators to improve services to the asset and ensure that information is readily available for building occupiers?

### Aim

To ensure the availability of public transport links for people travelling to and from the asset; thereby encouraging and facilitating public transport usage.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

1. An agreement should be made with local transport operators and be tailored to the organisations requirements.
2. Information should be freely available to all building users. This can be done through hardcopies or softcopies (i.e. through intranet, notice boards, leaflets or email) or a combination of the two.
3. For organisations with a fixed shift pattern i.e. where building users will predominantly arrive/depart at set times, the credits can be allocated when a dedicated bus service to and from the building at the beginning and end of each shift/day has been provided. The bus must provide transfer to the local population centre, public transport interchange or be a door-to-door service.

### Evidence

1. A copy of the arrangement(s) with local public transport provider(s).
2. A copy of public transport operator timetables.
3. A copy of the public transport route map highlighting the location of the asset.
4. Evidence confirming installation of measures that are in place to make the information available to building users. This could include, but is not limited to, photographic evidence of notice boards or copies of leaflets.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management TRA 08 – Local amenities

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

Is information made available to asset users on the location of local amenities near the asset?

### Aim

To ensure that asset users do not travel excessively to reach amenities; thereby reducing the environmental impact of prolonged travel.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

### Assessment criteria

- Local amenities include, but are not limited to:
  - Local convenience store
  - ATM
  - Post office
- Site and local amenities information needs to be made readily available to all building users. This can be done via hardcopies or softcopies (i.e. leaflets, maps or information board).
- The distance/time required to get to the local amenities should be clearly communicated within the information provision.

### Evidence

- Evidence of information provision to all building users such as photographic evidence of an information board or local information leaflets.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management TRA 09 – Transport objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

In the last calendar year, what percentage of the transport objectives and targets were achieved?

### Aim

To ensure that targets related to transport are met within an appropriate timeframe, enabling the introduction of new targets; thus ensuring the continual improvement of transport.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

### Assessment criteria

1. Targets must be for the latest available year.

### Evidence

1. Copy of documented targets and when these were achieved.
2. Documentation and photographic evidence confirming installation of measures that support the Assessment criteria.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management TRA 10 – Transport impact of commuting

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What is the total work commute in kilometres per annum for staff in the asset?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the measurement of annual distance travelled for staff commute; improving knowledge of management, and enabling quantitative targets to be implemented.

### Available credits

Mode of transport	Figures to be entered in relevant fields (2 credits can be awarded if known for 1 or more categories).
Car (km/annum)	
Train (km/annum)	
Light rail/tram (km/annum)	
Bus (km/annum)	
Motorbike (km/annum)	
Bicycle/walk (km/annum)	

### Assessment criteria

1. Staff commute relates to the total distance that people that work in the asset travel to and from work. This does **not** include additional business related trips, such as external meetings.
2. Travel data should be collected through travel surveys or other reliable form of data collection.

### Evidence

1. A copy of a document demonstrating results of staff commuting survey, illustrating a relevant transport data
2. Documentation illustrating how such data was acquired.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management TRA 11 – Transport impact of business travel

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What are the transport impacts of business travel relating to this asset in kilometres per annum?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the measurement of annual distance travelled for business; thereby improving knowledge of management, and enabling quantitative targets to be implemented.

### Available credits

Mode of transport	Figures to be entered in relevant fields (maximum of 2 credits available)
Long haul flights, over 7 hours in length often involving intercontinental travel (km/annum)	
Short haul flights, 3200 km/4.5 hours in length (km/annum)	
Domestic flights, 800 km/1.5 hours in length (km/annum)	
Car (km/annum)	
Train (km/annum)	
Light rail/tram (km/annum)	
Bus (km/annum)	
Motorbike (km/annum)	
Bicycle/walk (km/annum)	

### Assessment criteria

1. Business travel relates to the total distance that people that work in the asset travel for business. (This includes business related trips, such as external meetings, overseas conferences, etc.)

### Evidence

1. Transport data, including documentation illustrating how such data was acquired.

## Additional information

-

## Occupier Management TRA 12 – Transport impact of goods delivery

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What is the total business related transport impact of goods delivery from operations in this asset?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the measurement of the annual distance travelled for goods delivery; thereby improving knowledge of management, and enabling quantitative targets to be implemented.

### Available credits

Mode of transport	Figures to be entered in relevant fields (2 credits available)
Heavy goods vehicle (HGV) (km/annum)	
Large goods vehicle (LGV) (km/annum)	
Van (km/annum)	
Rail freight (tonne km/annum)	
Marine freight (tonne km/annum)	

### Assessment criteria

1. Goods delivery from operations includes goods delivered to **AND** from the asset.
2. Where there are no business related impacts of goods delivery please fill in '0' in the relevant fields. Credits will then be awarded accordingly.

### Evidence

1. Goods delivery figures, including documentation illustrating how such data was acquired.

### Additional information

-

# Water

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
WAT 18	Water management	3
WAT 19	Water management arrangements	48
WAT 20	Water management targets	4
WAT 21	Water consumption	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>57</b>

## Occupier Management WAT 18 – Water management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

### Question

How are activities managed to avoid unnecessary water consumption?

### Aim

To ensure the reduction of water consumption and the demands placed on water supplies.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
0	Question not answered	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Activities are not managed	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Green/staff champions identified to encourage reduction of water wastage	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Awareness training for staff	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Staff feedback mechanisms in place to raise issues, such as leakages	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

1. Staff champions should promote reductions in water consumption through frequent engagement with staff.
2. Awareness raising should be through seminars, team meetings or general updates.
3. Feedback mechanisms should be simple to access.

### Evidence

1. Interviews with relevant staff.
2. Copy of awareness raising material.
3. Copy of relevant feedback procedures.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WAT 19 – Water management arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
48	Yes

### Question

To what extent are water management arrangements in place that allow monitoring against set targets?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage management arrangements aimed at reducing the consumption of water and increasing awareness of water consumption.

### Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Pass' rating the occupying organisations must ensure that water consumption is recorded.
2. In addition to point 1, to gain a 'Good' rating the occupying organisation must ensure that water consumption is monitored.

### Available credits

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Scope and objectives defined	1
Water consumption is recorded	1
Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed	1
A water management system is in place	1
Water consumption is monitored	1
Includes mechanisms to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy	1
Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available	1
Environmental management system (EMS) includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to water	1
Water saving initiatives are undertaken (in line with the appropriate annex)*	40*
Other	0

\*Annex section on page 402

## Annex

The water consumption reduction initiatives annex lists several in house initiatives that might be utilised by the organisation in order to meet the aims of this section.

### Assessment criteria

1. A water management policy should address/declare that:
  - a) The organisation will comply with environmental legislation relating to water management.
  - b) The organisation is dedicated to reducing consumption of water as a result of its operation and related activities.
  - c) As part of the strategy there must be:
    - i. A water consumption minimisation champion, who has the support of senior management, with responsibility for the necessary communications, resources, action program and training to make the strategy work
    - ii. Some form of training of employees in their role(s) and responsibilities for water consumption minimisation

### Evidence

1. Copy of the water management arrangements
2. Copies of records for monitoring the consumption phases / sectors / areas / processes
3. Agenda of the training records, employee attendance records
4. Management review records where relevant to water management
5. Interviews with staff champions

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WAT 20 – Water management targets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

In the last calendar year, what percentage of annual water management objectives/targets was achieved?

### Aim

To ensure that water management objectives are met within an appropriate timeframe, enabling the introduction of new targets; thus ensuring the continual improvement of water performance.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

### Assessment criteria

1. Figures must be those relating to the latest annual targets that have been set.

### Evidence

1. Meter readings from previous year.
2. Current meter readings.
3. Copy of water management policy highlighting water targets.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WAT 21 – Water consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What was the total quantity of water consumed (in cubic metres) during the last calendar year?

### Aim

To ensure that management and occupants of the asset are aware of the consumption of water for the last year.

### Available credits

Credits	Enter total quantity of water consumed in cubic metres during last calendar year
2	

### Assessment criteria

1. The occupying organisation must make clear how this information was collected.

### Evidence

1. Meter readings from previous year
2. Utility bills

### Additional information

-

# Materials

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAT 15	Material procurement issues	7
MAT 16	Material procurement issues	52
MAT 17	Supplier approval	3
MAT 18	Supplier quality policy	4
MAT 19	Supplier environmental management	4
MAT 20	Supplier quality management (third party certified)	4
MAT 21	Supplier management	4
MAT 22	Supplier responsible sourcing standard (third party certified)	4
MAT 23	Material procurement targets	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>86</b>

## Occupier Management MAT 15 – Material procurement issues

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
7	Yes

### Question

To what extent are sustainability and environmental issues considered when procuring materials?

### Aim

To limit the environmental impact of materials procured for occupant activities.

### Minimum standards

To gain an 'Outstanding' rating the occupier of the asset must ensure that responsible procurement has been conducted in accordance with a procedure/guideline/standard that has international scope. Further information regarding responsible sourcing can be found on [www.breeam.com](http://www.breeam.com).

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
0	Not applicable	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Minimising the emission from deliveries	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Procedures are in place to reduce procurement of consumables where practicable	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Procedures are in place to take account of embodied emission impacts such as recyclability, low energy, reusable, sustainable, life cycle	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Responsible sourcing has been conducted in accordance with a procedure/guideline/standard that has international scope. Further information regarding responsible sourcing can be found on <a href="http://www.breeam.com">www.breeam.com</a>	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	

### Assessment criteria

1. Materials that are covered in the procurement policy relate to materials that are needed to perform the tasks that are relevant to the type of asset. These materials can include, but are not limited to:
  - a) Office paper
  - b) Cleaning products
  - c) Ink cartridges
  - d) Electrical equipment

2. Criteria such as working conditions, environmental practices, safety standards, and human rights policies should be factored into the selection process.
3. Where contracting with a supplier, companies should make it known that they expect business partners to comply with all national laws and regulations, including labour and environmental laws.
4. All timber or timber based products that is procured is 'Legally harvested and Legally traded timber' as outlined in the additional information section.

## Evidence

1. Copy of Sustainable procurement policy,
2. Evidence of actions taken to monitor embodied impacts of purchased materials,
3. Documented confirmation from suppliers,
4. Certification reference number against appropriate responsible sourcing standard.

## Additional information

### Relevant definitions

**Responsible sourcing:** The management and implementation of sustainable development principles in the provision, procurement and traceability of construction materials and components. In BREEAM, this is demonstrated through auditable third party certification schemes. More information will be available in the Resources section on [www.breeam.com](http://www.breeam.com). Including an up to date table of responsible sourcing certification schemes recognised by BRE Global Ltd. for the purposes of a BREEAM assessment.

BRE Global framework standard (BES 6001) for responsibly sourcing of construction products:

1. Organisational management
2. Supply chain management
3. Environmental and social care

For a copy of the standard, application forms, fee sheets, scheme document and certified listings related to Responsible Sourcing of Construction Products please visit the Green Book Live Website; <http://www.greenbooklive.com>

To ease compliance burden on suppliers, which tend to small and medium-sized enterprises, organisations should consider partnering with sectorial associations that have developed industry-wide supplier codes of conduct. Examples of such initiatives include the Business Social Compliance Initiative, The Electronics Industry Citizenship Coalition and the International Council of Toy Industries CARE Foundation.

**Legally harvested timber:** timber that has been harvested in accordance with the applicable legislation in the country of harvest.

**Legally traded timber:** timber that is legally traded means timber or products derived from timber were:

1. Exported in compliance with exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
2. Imported in compliance with importing country laws governing the import of timber and timber products, including payment of any import taxes, duties, or levies or not in contravention of exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.

3. Traded in compliance with legislation related to the convention on international trade in endangered species (CITES) where applicable.

## Occupier Management MAT 16 – Material procurement issues

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
52	No

### Question

Are management arrangements for the procurement of materials that allow monitoring against set targets in place?

### Aim

To increase awareness and continuously limit the environmental impact of materials procured for occupant activities.

### Available credits

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Scope and objectives are defined and appropriate requirements specified	1
Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed	1
A management system is in place to promote the efficient use of materials	1
Management arrangements include procedures to incorporate feedback from staff, clients and other stakeholders	1
Materials purchasing is monitored to include need, quantities, and sustainability issues	1
Awareness seminars/training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding materials procurement	1
Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the materials policy, objectives and targets	1
Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for materials procurement	1
Mechanisms are in place to incorporate feedback into procurement procedures or strategy	1
Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available	1
A list of acceptable suppliers is maintained for all materials.	1
An environmental management system (EMS) is in place that includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to materials procurement	1

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Initiatives to reduce materials procurement impacts are undertaken (in line with the appropriate annex)*	40*
Other	0

\*Annex section on page 403

## Annex

The materials initiatives annex lists several in house initiatives that might be utilised by the organisation in order to meet the aims of this section.

## Assessment criteria

1. Organisations must ensure that top management quality objectives, that meet the requirements of business products, are established at relevant functions and levels within the organisation. It is important that quality objectives are deemed measurable and consistent with the quality policy. In planning product realisation, organisations shall determine the following, as appropriate:
  - a) Quality objectives and requirements for the product
  - b) The need to establish processes and documents and to provide resources specific to products
  - c) Required verification, validation, monitoring, measurement, inspection and test activities specific to the product and the criteria for product acceptance;
  - d) Records needed to provide evidence that the realisation processes and resulting product meet requirements

## Evidence

1. Copy of the procurement arrangements/procurement policy highlighting the relevant clauses.
2. Material-Management-System/Register.
3. Visual inspection of the internal organisational structure of the systems.
4. Interviews with employees.
5. Copy of the records to verify the Procurement Policy.
6. Agenda of the training records, training materials etc.
7. Copy of the procurement arrangements, including names of key personnel, objectives and guidelines used.
8. Complete records and certificates of employees.

## Additional information

### Other information

EN ISO 9001:2008 "Quality Management Systems – Requirements" (ISO 9001:2008 5.3 Quality Policy)

## Occupier Management MAT 17 – Supplier approval

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

### Question

Which of the following initiatives are used to determine the acceptability of suppliers?

### Aim

To ensure that materials are ethically and sustainably sourced by suppliers.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	The acceptability of suppliers is not determined
2	A Supplier Questionnaire/Survey is in use
3	Membership of an industry/supply chain initiative (e.g. Ethical Trading Initiative (ETI), or Sedex) is required
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. The acceptability of suppliers should be reviewed annually or when suppliers change to ensure the applicability of the requirements.

### Evidence

1. Copy of supplier questionnaire/survey
2. Copy of letter(s) sent to suppliers
3. Copy of membership certificate.

### Additional information

#### Other information

Organisations can ask their suppliers to provide comprehensive information about their social and environmental practices. Onsite visits can be organised to monitor suppliers' progress, or lack of progress, in meeting social and environmental performance objectives. Evaluating this information can become part of a company's regular assessments of business requirements. Businesses can involve their suppliers' factory management and workers in monitoring, and provide training and tools to develop their own compliance system and identify problems.

## Occupier Management MAT 18 – Supplier quality policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of suppliers is required to have a quality policy?

### Aim

To ensure that suppliers document objectives for quality and the commitment of to ensure quality.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

### Assessment criteria

1. A supplier/contractors quality policy should be:
  - a) Appropriate to the purposes of the organisation in question
  - b) Include commitment to comply with requirements and continually improve the effectiveness of their quality management
  - c) Provide a framework for establishing and reviewing quality objectives
  - d) Reviewed at appropriate intervals for continuing suitability
2. The quality policy of the supplier does not necessarily have to be third party certified in order to comply with the credit requirements.
3. The asset owner should review that the environmental management system of suppliers is in place annually or when suppliers change to ensure the applicability of the requirements.

### Evidence

1. Copy of the letters distributed to suppliers/contractors asking for the quality policy.
2. Copy of the suppliers polices.

3. List outlining all suppliers and those who have a quality policy in place.

### **Additional information**

-

## Occupier Management MAT 19 – Supplier environmental management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of suppliers is required to have an environmental management system?

### Aim

To ensure that suppliers manage their activities and processes to prevent or mitigate harmful environmental impacts.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

### Assessment criteria

1. It is important that a supplier's management system has identified the significant environmental aspects that are applicable to their organisation and that they can control directly and indirectly.
2. A supplier/contractors quality policy should be:
  - a) Appropriate to the purposes of the organisation in question
  - b) Include commitment to comply with requirements and continually improve the effectiveness of their quality management
  - c) Provide a framework for establishing and reviewing quality objectives
  - d) Reviewed at appropriate intervals for continuing suitability
3. The asset owner should review that the environmental management system of suppliers is in place annually or when suppliers change to ensure the applicability of the requirements.
4. The environmental management system of the supplier does not necessarily have to be third party certified in order to comply with the credit requirements.

## **Evidence**

1. Copy of the letters distributed to suppliers/contractors asking for the quality policy.
2. Copy of the suppliers policies.
3. List outlining all suppliers and those who have an environmental management system in place.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

EN ISO 9001:2008 “Quality Management Systems – Requirements” (ISO 9001:2008 5.4.1 Quality Objectives)

## Occupier Management MAT 20 – Supplier quality management (third party certified)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of suppliers must have third party certification under a quality management standard such as ISO 9001 or equivalent?

### Aim

To ensure that suppliers document objectives for quality and the commitment of the supplier to ensure quality.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisations in question shall have an implemented and maintained quality management system that is structured accordingly to continually improve its effectiveness in accordance with the requirements of International Standards.
2. Organisations that have a certified Quality Management System should:
  - a) Determine the processes needed for the quality management system and their application throughout the organisation,
  - b) Determine the sequence and interaction of these processes,
  - c) Determine the criteria and methods needed to ensure that the operation and monitoring of the above processes,
  - d) Ensure the availability of resources and information necessary to support the operation and monitoring of these processes, and
  - e) Monitor, measure where applicable, and analyse these processes, and

- f) Implement actions necessary to achieve planned results and continual improvement of the above processes.

## **Evidence**

1. Copy of the letters distributed to suppliers/contractors asking for the quality policy.
2. Copy of the suppliers policies.

## **Additional information**

### **Other information**

EN ISO 9001:2008 “Quality Management Systems – Requirements” (ISO 9001:2008 4.1 General requirements)

## Occupier Management MAT 21 – Supplier management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of suppliers must have third party certification under an environmental management standard such as ISO 14001 or equivalent?

### Aim

To ensure that suppliers manage their activities and processes to prevent or mitigate harmful environmental impacts.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

### Assessment criteria

1. This international standard is applicable to any organisation that wishes to:
  - a) Maintain and improve an environmental management systems
  - b) Assure itself of conformity with its stated environmental policy

### Evidence

1. Copy of supplier certification under relevant standard.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management MAT 22 – Supplier responsible sourcing standard (third party certified)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

What percentage of suppliers is required to have a third party certification under a recognised responsible sourcing standard?

### Aim

To ensure that supplier's products have been manufactured with materials that have been responsibly sourced.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

### Assessment criteria

- Responsible sourcing has been conducted in accordance with a procedure/guideline/standard that has international scope. Further information regarding responsible sourcing can be found on [www.breeam.com](http://www.breeam.com)
- All timber or timber based products must be 'Legally harvested and Legally traded timber' as outlined in the additional information section.

### Evidence

- Copy of supplier certification under relevant standard.

### Additional information

#### Relevant definitions

**Responsible sourcing:** The management and implementation of sustainable development principles in the provision, procurement and traceability of construction materials and components. In BREEAM,

this is demonstrated through auditable third party certification schemes. More information will be available in the Resources section on [www.breeam.com](http://www.breeam.com). Including an up to date table of responsible sourcing certification schemes recognised by BRE Global Ltd. for the purposes of a BREEAM assessment.

BRE Global framework standard (BES 6001) for responsibly sourcing of construction products:

1. Organisational management
2. Supply chain management
3. Environmental and social care

For a copy of the standard, application forms, fee sheets, scheme document and certified listings related to Responsible Sourcing of Construction Products please visit the Green Book Live Website; <http://www.greenbooklive.com>

To ease compliance burden on suppliers, which tend to small and medium-sized enterprises, organisations should consider partnering with sectorial associations that have developed industry-wide supplier codes of conduct. Examples of such initiatives include the Business Social Compliance Initiative, The Electronics Industry Citizenship Coalition and the International Council of Toy Industries CARE Foundation.

**Legally harvested timber:** timber that has been harvested in accordance with the applicable legislation in the country of harvest.

**Legally traded timber:** timber that is legally traded means timber or products derived from timber were:

1. Exported in compliance with exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
2. Imported in compliance with importing country laws governing the import of timber and timber products, including payment of any import taxes, duties, or levies or not in contravention of exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
3. Traded in compliance with legislation related to the convention on international trade in endangered species (CITES) where applicable.

## Occupier Management MAT 23 – Material procurement targets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

In the last calendar year, what percentage of materials procurement objectives and targets were achieved?

### Aim

To ensure that material procurement targets are met within an appropriate timeframe, enabling the introduction of new targets; thus ensuring the continual improvement of material procurement.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

### Assessment criteria

1. Figures must be those relating to the latest annual targets that have been set.

### Evidence

1. Copy of documented material procurement objectives and targets,
2. Management Review minutes,
3. Review company website, intranet for publication of information.

### Additional information

-

# Waste

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
WST 02	Waste management	8
WST 03	Waste management	4
WST 04	Waste management arrangements	51
WST 05	Waste monitoring	4
WST 06	Waste performance	2
WST 07	Waste management objectives	4
WST 08	Waste sent to landfill	2
WST 09	Waste diverted from landfill	2
WST 10	Waste sent for incineration	2
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>79</b>

## Occupier Management WST 02 – Waste management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
8	No

### Question

How is waste managed in line with the waste hierarchy?

### Aim

To encourage alignment of waste management policies with the waste hierarchy.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
0	Question not answered	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	All waste is put into a bin	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Waste management policy incorporates the reduction of waste produced	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Waste management policy incorporates the reuse of waste materials	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Waste management policy incorporates recycling of waste	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Waste management policy incorporates recovery of energy from waste	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisations waste management policy should state how the alignment with the waste hierarchy criteria specified is achieved.
2. The waste management policy can refer to waste from products consumed and/or produced by the organisation.

### Evidence

1. Copy of the waste management policy

### Additional information

#### Other information

The EU Waste Framework Directive (2008/98EC) sets out the waste hierarchy that should be applied as a priority order in waste prevention and management legislation and policy:

- a) Prevention;
- b) Preparing for re-use;
- c) Recycling;

- d) Other recovery, e.g. energy recovery; and
- e) Disposal.

The Directive states that when applying the waste hierarchy, all measures to encourage the options that deliver the best overall environmental outcome should be taken. This may require specific waste streams departing from the hierarchy where this is justified by life-cycle thinking on the overall impacts of the generation and management of such waste.

## Occupier Management WST 03 – Waste management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

How are waste streams managed to minimise environmental impact?

### Aim

To encourage ease of recycling and reclamation when waste creation is unavoidable.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
0	Question not answered	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	All waste is put into a bin	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Waste is crushed for ease of storage on site before removal for recycling	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	4 or more waste streams are segregated before removal or comingled recycling bins are used throughout the asset	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Waste is discarded in separate bins by staff within the asset	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Bins are adequately labelled to allow ease of use for staff	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

1. Waste streams refer to different types of waste generated within the building, such as:
  - a) Paper
  - b) Cardboard
  - c) Packaging
  - d) Plastics; including packing film
  - e) Glass
  - f) Batteries
  - g) Timber
  - h) Fluorescent lamps
  - i) Vegetable oils
  - j) Mineral oils
2. Different coloured glass separation is classed as one waste stream.

## Evidence

1. Photographs of how waste is managed such as:
  - a) Waste crushing apparatus
  - b) Waste segregation
  - c) Internal waste segregation
  - d) Labelling of bins

## Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WST 04 – Waste management arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
51	No

### Question

To what extent are waste management arrangements/strategies which set targets and monitors implementation in place?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage management arrangements aimed at improving waste production performance, segregation and awareness.

### Available credits

(Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met)

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Scope and objectives defined	1
Total waste volume/mass is recorded	1
Targets are set to promote better waste management and monitored	1
Waste management system is in place and operational	1
Waste generation is monitored	1
Awareness seminars/training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding waste minimisation and management	1
Formal, regular training including legislation and compliance awareness, is provided for staff responsible for waste management	1
Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the waste management policies, objectives and targets	1
Includes mechanisms to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy	1
Staff responsible for waste management work closely with an authorised waste management firm to ensure waste practices are managed efficiently	1
Environmental management system (EMS) includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to waste	1

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Initiatives are taken to minimise waste (in line with the appropriate annex)*	40*
Other	0

\*Annex section on page 404

## Annex

The waste initiatives annex lists several in house initiatives that might be utilised by the organisation in order to meet the aims of this section.

## Assessment criteria

1. Organisations must ensure that top management quality objectives, that meet the requirements of business requirements, are established at relevant functions and levels within the organisation. It is important that objectives are deemed measurable and consistent with the policy. In planning product realisation, organisations shall determine the following, as appropriate:
  - a) Quality objectives and requirements for waste management
  - b) The need to establish processes and documents and to provide resources specific to waste management
  - c) Required verification, validation, monitoring, measurement, inspection and test activities specific to waste management and the criteria for waste management acceptance;
  - d) Records needed to provide evidence that the realisation processes and resulting waste management meet requirements

## Evidence

1. Evidence provided for the relevant criteria can include:
  - a) Audits
  - b) Procedures
  - c) Strategies
  - d) Interviews
  - e) Any other deemed suitable by the assessors sound judgement

## Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WST 05 – Waste monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

How many waste types are recorded and monitored?

### Aim

To promote the practise of monitoring waste arisings within the asset so the organisation can understand what it produces and thus target improvements with well-designed policy.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	No recording or monitoring of waste types
1	2 waste types recorded and monitored
2	3 waste types recorded and monitored
4	4 or more waste types recorded and monitored
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation should be able to demonstrate that it is recording/monitoring waste arisings within the asset by providing up to date figures for waste types produced within the asset on (at least) a monthly basis.
2. Recording/monitoring of waste arisings should be performed in a way which allows easy interpretation of data and be more detailed than annual figures received from waste carriers. Providing complex information; bills from waste carriers for example, **does not** count as active monitoring/recording.

### Evidence

1. Copy of recording/monitoring; this can be information contained within spread sheets etc.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WST 06 – Waste performance

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

How often is the organisation's waste performance reviewed?

### Aim

To encourage the continual improvement of waste performance.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Never
0	Infrequently
1	At least annually
2	At least twice a year

### Assessment criteria

1. Where waste audits are regularly carried out, the following should be considered:
  - a) The quantities of waste of each type generated
  - b) The way in which wastes are being handled and stored
  - c) The costs of disposal for different types of waste
  - d) Cost savings as a result of waste minimisation strategies (where historical data for comparison is available)
  - e) An audit has been carried out prior to the assessment and within the past twelve months The audit has been used to inform and update the waste strategy

### Evidence

1. Copy of waste audit process and relevant paper trail.
2. Dates of previous two audits.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WST 07 – Waste management objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

In the last calendar year, what percentage of annual waste management objectives was achieved?

### Aim

To encourage and recognise the meeting of waste management objectives, thereby improving waste performance.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

### Assessment criteria

1. Targets must have been met for the latest annual review period.

### Evidence

1. Agreed and documented informal incremental objectives/targets.
2. Presentation of achieved objectives, combined with relevant first hand evidence; waste transfer notes etc.

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WST 08 – Waste sent to landfill

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What is the total quantity of waste sent to landfill in metric tonnes?

### Aim

To identify the impact of waste that is sent to landfill.

### Available credits

Credits	Enter quantity of waste sent to landfill in metric tonnes during last calendar year
2	

### Assessment criteria

1. The occupant of the asset must make clear how this information was collected.
2. Data provided must be for the same time period as the data provided in Occupier Management WST 09 – Waste diverted from landfill and Occupier Management WST 10 – Waste sent for incineration.

### Evidence

1. Copies of Waste Transfer and Consignment Note's.
2. Copies of relevant invoices and receipts.
3. Visual inspection and/or hard copy of waste calculation sheet.
4. Internal and External audit reports relevant to waste management practices (if environmental management system has been implemented by participating organisation).
5. Relevant section of CSR report (if written by participating organisation).

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WST 09 – Waste diverted from landfill

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What is the total quantity of waste diverted from landfill in metric tonnes?

### Aim

To encourage and promote the recycling of resources, avoiding the associated impacts of sending waste to landfill.

### Available credits

Credits	Enter quantity of waste diverted from landfill in metric tonnes during last calendar year
2	

### Assessment criteria

1. The occupant of the asset must make clear how this information was collected.
2. Data provided must be for the same time period as the data provided in Occupier Management WST 08 – Waste sent to landfill and Occupier Management WST 10 – Waste sent for incineration.

### Evidence

1. Copies of Waste Transfer Note's,
2. Review of Organisational waste data calculations, Internal and External audit reports relevant to waste management practices (if environmental management system has been implemented by participating organisation),
3. Relevant section of CSR report (if written by participating organisation).

### Additional information

-

## Occupier Management WST 10 – Waste sent for incineration

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

### Question

What is the total quantity of waste sent for incineration in metric tonnes?

### Aim

To encourage and promote the recycling of resources, avoiding the associated impacts of sending waste to landfill.

### Available credits

Credits	Enter quantity of waste sent for incineration in metric tonnes during last calendar year
2	

### Assessment criteria

1. The occupant of the asset must make clear how this information was collected.
2. Data provided must be for the same time period as the data provided in Occupier Management WST 08 – Waste sent to landfill and Occupier Management WST 09 – Waste diverted from landfill.

### Evidence

1. Copies of Waste Transfer Notes or national equivalent.
2. Internal and External audit reports relevant to waste management practices (if environmental management system has been implemented by participating organisation).
3. Relevant section of CSR report (if written by participating organisation).

### Additional information

-

# Land Use and Ecology

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
LE 06	Ecology/biodiversity enhancement	3
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>3</b>

## Occupier Management LE 06 – Ecology/biodiversity enhancement

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

### Question

Does the organisation contribute to ecology/biodiversity enhancement through sponsorship or active support?

### Aim

To encourage organisations to support local ecology and biodiversity.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	No
1	Partnerships/sponsorship or active support arrangements are in place with international wildlife protection/enhancement organisations
2	Partnerships/sponsorship or active support arrangements are in place with regional/national wildlife protection/enhancement organisations
3	Partnerships/sponsorship or active support arrangements are in place with local wildlife protection/enhancement organisations
0	Other

### Assessment criteria

1. Partnerships/sponsorship and active support can come through direct donations of capital and/or staff time.
2. Partnerships/sponsorship and active support are most valuable when applied at a local level. Therefore, international partnerships are recognised but not awarded the maximum number of credits.
3. Partnerships/sponsorship and active support can be given to a range of groups. As a guide, these groups could:
  - a) Provide advice on protecting the habitat for species of local importance to/on the site.
  - b) Draw on their local knowledge of any features or species of ecological interest on or near the site.
  - c) Provide on-going support and advice to the educational establishment to help manage, maintain and develop the outdoor space in the longer term.

## **Evidence**

1. Copy of relevant partnership/sponsorship documents.

## **Additional information**

-

# Pollution

## Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
POL 15	Pollution management	11
POL 16	Pollution prevention arrangements	52
POL 17	Pollution prevention targets	4
<b>Total credits available</b>		<b>67</b>

## Occupier Management POL 15 – Pollution management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
11	Yes

### Question

Is pollution managed through avoidance and management of risks?

### Aim

To ensure the avoidance, or minimal production or use of polluting/hazardous materials.

### Minimum standards

To gain a 'Very Good' rating the occupying organisation must manage pollution control in line with effective incident response guidance/procedures in accordance to local, national, or international guidance/procedures.

### Available credits

Credits	Tick where appropriate	
2	Use of effective incident response guidance/procedures in accordance to local, national, or international guidance/procedures	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Reduce and effectively control environmental pollution impacts (these should include the following, as a minimum, where relevant: lighting, noise generating plant/equipment, traffic nuisance)	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Use of CO <sub>2</sub> , CO and Nitrous Oxides (NO <sub>x</sub> ) and other emission controls	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Use of non-polluting/non-hazardous alternatives wherever possible (these should include the following, as a minimum and where relevant: cleaning products, refrigerants, lubricants, oils, hydraulic fluids, paints, adhesives, batteries)	<input type="checkbox"/>
0	Other	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Assessment criteria

- Analysis of risks from dangerous substances, prevention and management can be demonstrated by, but not limited to:
  - Risk assessment
  - Procurement strategies
  - Emergency procedures
- Management practices should be reviewed annually or when changes to any system/building element are made.

## Evidence

1. Relevant documentation outlining pollution management through avoidance and management of risks such as copies of:
  - a) Risk assessments
  - b) Procurement strategies
  - c) Emergency procedures

## Additional information

-

## Occupier Management POL 16 – Pollution prevention arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
52	No

### Question

To what extent are pollution prevention objectives/management arrangements in place that allow monitoring against set targets?

### Aim

To recognise and encourage management arrangements aimed at reducing the pollution and increasing awareness of pollutants.

### Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Very Good' rating the occupying organisation's pollution prevention management must ensure all pollution risks, levels and incidents are recorded.
2. In addition to point 1, to gain an 'Excellent' rating, the occupying organisation's pollution prevention management must ensure that regular inspection and maintenance of machinery/equipment that is operational in the organisation's day-to-day activities is conducted.

### Available credits

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Scope and objectives defined	1
Pollution risks, levels and incidents are recorded	1
Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed	1
Regular inspection and maintenance of machinery/equipment operational in the organisation's day-to-day activities to minimise the risk of pollution occurring	1
Routine inspection and maintenance of machinery/equipment occasionally operated in the organisations activities to minimise the risk of pollution occurring	1
Pollution risks, levels and incidents are monitored	1
Awareness seminars/training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding pollution avoidance and control	1
Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the pollution management policies, objectives and targets	1
Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for pollution prevention and management	1

Answer option	Credit(s) Awarded
Mechanisms are in place to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy	1
Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available	1
Environmental management system (EMS) includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to pollution	1
Initiatives are undertaken to prevent pollution (in line with the appropriate annex)*	40*
Other	0

\*Annex section on page 406

## Annex

The pollution prevention initiatives annex lists several in house initiatives that might be utilised by the organisation in order to meet the aims of this section.

## Assessment criteria

1. Organisations must ensure that top management quality objectives, that meet the requirements of business requirements, are established at relevant functions and levels within the organisation. It is important that objectives are deemed measurable and consistent with the policy. In planning product realisation, organisations shall determine the following, as appropriate:
  - a) Quality objectives and requirements for pollution management
  - b) The need to establish processes and documents and to provide resources specific to pollution management
  - c) Required verification, validation, monitoring, measurement, inspection and test activities specific to pollution management and the criteria for pollution management acceptance;
  - d) Records needed to provide evidence that the realisation processes and resulting pollution management meet requirements

## Evidence

1. Copy of the pollutant avoidance agreements business rules.
2. Copy of records of pollutants and all compensation measures undertaken including a copy of the register of pollution accidents.
3. Copy of the records of maintenance and repair copy of the maintenance register photos.
4. Copy of the records of maintenance and repair copy of the maintenance register.
5. Copy of the records for inspection during operation.
6. Copy of the pollutant avoidance agreements agenda of the training records, interviews with staff.
7. Copy of the pollutant avoidance agreement names of the employees, interviews with employees.
8. Records and certificates of the employees who have completed the training interviews with employees.

9. Assessor information for visual inspection of the internal organisation structure of systems date of the last feedback.
10. Copy of the pollutant avoidance agreement benchmarks used.
11. Credentials of the peer group date of benchmarks compared to the measured, which were published.

### **Additional information**

-

## Occupier Management POL 17 – Pollution prevention targets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

### Question

In the last calendar year, what percentage of pollution prevention objectives and targets were achieved?

### Aim

To ensure that targets set ensuring continual action to prevent pollution.

### Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

### Assessment criteria

Not applicable.

### Evidence

1. Agreed and documented informal incremental objectives/targets, allowing improvements to be assessed against.
2. Presentation of achieved objectives.
3. Copy of pollution Management Strategy (relating to set objectives/targets).

### Additional information

-

# Annex A: Offices

## Introduction

The annex questions for offices cover a range of initiatives which might be undertaken by the organisation in order to improve its performance. The categories which have appendix question sets are:

- Health and Wellbeing
- Energy
- Transport
- Water
- Materials
- Waste
- Pollution

## Available credits

Each section within the annex has the potential to earn credits, which are then added to the final score in Part 3: Occupier Management.

## Assessment criteria

In order to demonstrate compliance, as with all other questions, the organisation will need to demonstrate that it is actively practising the relevant initiatives.

## HEA 26A – Health and Wellbeing

Health and Wellbeing Initiatives	Credit(s) Available
Provision of planters in occupied areas	1
Clear labelling of hazardous areas, e.g. electricity machinery rooms	2
Provision of comfortable and controllable lighting at workstations	2
Provision of refreshment facilities, e.g. canteen/restaurant, hot and cold drink provision, vending machines	2
Provision of external rest areas	2
Monitoring and if necessary reducing office noise levels to acceptable levels.	4
Monitoring of internal air quality and making changes to address issues raised	4
Avoiding the use of equipment, such as printers and photocopiers, within main office areas without adequate local ventilation	4
Implementation of a system for staff to give feedback on comfort of an asset	4
Provision or subsidisation of the use of sports facilities	4
Encouraging social activities, e.g. team building activities, organisation of social events etc.	4
Provision of indoor rest areas and/or staff lounges	4
Provision of a health plan for staff, e.g. employee discount with private health care organisations, corporate discount with fitness club etc.	4
<b>Total credits available</b>	<b>41</b>

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the assessor on a case by case basis.

### Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Photographic evidence.
  - b) Technical/manufacturer information.
  - c) Staff interviews.
  - d) Any other method deemed suitable by the assessor.

## ENE 68A – Energy

Energy Initiatives	Credit(s) Awarded
Energy saving tips and signage on Information Technology (IT) equipment	1
No supplementary heating/cooling/ventilation	2
Use of energy efficient printers and photocopiers, e.g. photocopier with sleep mode	2
Making guidance on use of blinds on windows in order to maximise daylight available	2
Policy to minimise printing	2
Use of proximity/time switches to equipment	2
Reduction in electrical information technology equipment, such as printers, through group use	2
Switching off lights and equipment during out-of-work hours	2
Making guidance on manual control of heating and cooling available	2
Switching off equipment rather than leaving on standby	2
Use of water boilers in place of kettles	3
Use of energy efficient servers	3
The virtualisation of servers	3
Use of Light Emitting Diode (LED) screens	4
Use of low power work stations and/or laptops, and a remote server which hosts all information Technology (IT) applications and data storage	4
Voltage optimisation of mains electricity	4
<b>Total credits available</b>	<b>40</b>

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the assessor on a case by case basis.

### Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Photographic evidence.

- b) Technical/manufacturer information.
- c) Staff interviews.
- d) Any other method deemed suitable by the assessor.

## TRA 06A – Transport

Transport Saving Initiatives	Credit(s) Available
Policy for a staff care share scheme	2
Well-lit foot and cycle paths on and around the site to optimise safety and encourage use	2
Home working policy	2
Restricted parking based on a needs-based permit system that gives priority to drivers that meet certain criteria	2
Charging for parking	2
Staff car pool (more than 1 person going to customer for meeting)	2
Policy for staff use public transport network if travelling on business within the local area	2
All car pool cars to have CO <sub>2</sub> emissions within vehicle excise duty band B (101 - 110 CO <sub>2</sub> (g/km) ) or better	2
All rental cars to be have CO <sub>2</sub> emissions within vehicle excise duty band C (111 - 120 CO <sub>2</sub> (g/km) ) or better	2
Carbon offsetting of staff travel	2
Staff/visitor shuttle bus for travel to and from key transport links	4
Policy to calculate and monitor CO <sub>2</sub> or equivalent transport emissions from staff travel/commute	4
Incentives in place for travelling to work on foot, by bike, car sharing or by public transport for example a monthly free breakfast/lunch	4
Video-conferencing facilities	4
Phone or internet conferencing facilities	4
<b>Total credits available</b>	<b>40</b>

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the assessor on a case by case basis.

## Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Photographic evidence.
  - b) Technical/manufacture information.
  - c) Staff interviews.
  - d) Any other method deemed suitable by the assessor.

## WAT 19A – Water

Water Saving Initiatives	Credit(s) Awarded
Separate water meter on hot water cold feed to provide indication of hot water consumption	1
Water softeners are demand initiated (i.e. based on water consumption rather than a pre-programmed timer)	2
Insulating pipework	2
Water saving tips/signage	2
Only appliances requiring soft water are connected to water softeners	3
Policy to reuse water for landscaping	3
Reduce water consumption for landscape by use of mulch to retain moisture in the garden.	3
Install water butts to help collection of rain water for landscape use	3
Adopt principles of landscaping for water conservation – i.e. use plants that require less water	3
Reducing water pipe length	3
Ensure that water using appliances are operated with full loads	3
Fit water saving devices in cistern for flushing or fit low water consumption appliances	5
Water pressure reduction for general appliances	7
<b>Total credits available</b>	<b>40</b>

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the assessor on a case by case basis.

### Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Photographic evidence.
  - b) Technical/manufacture information.
  - c) Staff interviews.
  - d) Any other method deemed suitable by the assessor.

## MAT 16A – Materials

Materials Procurement initiatives	Credit(s) Awarded
Monitor and double check meeting arrangements to reduce over ordering refreshments, room size, facilities	2
Use of detergents which are fully degradable	2
Recyclability/Reusability - for example print cartridges	2
Base decision process on whole life cost of equipment and consumables, considering the following:	
Durability - extended life of products	2
Maintainability - ease of cleaning, self-cleaning	2
Upgradeability - computer equipment that can be upgraded, modular equipment	2
Work with suppliers to minimise packaging	4
Policy and procurement to ensure that printers with low impact such as ammonia free, non-carcinogenic toners	6
Policy to review all consumed products at least once every two years to identify alternatives which have less of an environmental impact	8
Working with suppliers to reduce impact of supply chain	10
<b>Total credits available</b>	<b>40</b>

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the assessor on a case by case basis.

### Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Photographic evidence.
  - b) Technical/manufacturer information.
  - c) Staff interviews.
  - d) Any other method deemed suitable by the assessor.

## WST 04A – Waste

Waste Initiative	Credit(s) Awarded
Office recycling schemes covering key office waste streams for example paper, magazines, printer/toner cartridges	1
Use clearly differentiated recycling bins (such as labelled and colour coordinated) to promote sorting at source	1
Double sided printing	1
Avoidance of printing emails etc.	1
Staff awareness and communication scheme	1
Incentives for staff to reduce waste	1
Use of recycled paper	1
Re-use of paper	1
Recycling schemes covering other office related waste streams: Cans and bottles, plastics, food waste	2
Electronic archiving	2
Policy and procedure to reuse of single sided printing as office notepads, draft printing etc.	2
Use of 80 gsm paper or lower for general use	2
Office food waste streams sent for recovery by composting or bio-gas	2
Policy and procedure to reuse office supplies such as folders, document wallets, paper clips etc.	2
Policy and contract to reuse unwanted IT equipment through local schools, charities, and community organisations	2
Policy and contract to reuse furniture within the organisation or through local schools, charities and community organisations	2
Policy and contract to work with suppliers to minimise and/or reuse packaging / take back surplus products	2
Encourage the use of reusable catering containers such as plates, cups etc.	2
Policy and procedure in place to recycle disposable batteries	2

<b>Waste Initiative</b>	<b>Credit(s) Awarded</b>
Conduct office surveys and occupant surveys to identify ways of minimising, recycling and managing waste	2
Use a certified/registered waste carrier to collect materials, such as; waste contractors, scrap metal merchants, recycling businesses, local authorities, and skip hire businesses	4
Work with a waste contractor to maximise reuse, recycling and minimise landfill	4
<b>Total credits available</b>	<b>40</b>

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the assessor on a case by case basis.

### Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Photographic evidence.
  - b) Technical/manufacturer information.
  - c) Staff interviews.
  - d) Any other method deemed suitable by the assessor.

## POL 16A – Pollution

<b>Pollution prevention and control initiatives to air, land and water</b>	<b>Credit(s) Awarded</b>
Procedures and training for safe delivery and handling of hazardous materials	4
Check chemical, oil and waste storage containers are fit for purpose, regularly inspected and maintained	6
Ensure wash waters from cleaning activities with detergents should be drained to foul sewer	6
Ensure oil interceptors are located and maintained in areas such as; car parks, garages, forecourts, kitchens and fuel delivery areas	6
Check surface water treatments address contamination by silt, chemicals, oils etc.	6
Check drainage plans are easily accessible to occupier	6
Appropriate contingency plans - spill kits or absorbent material for spillages or run off water from fire fighting	6
<b>Total credits available</b>	<b>40</b>

### Assessment criteria

1. The organisation must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the assessor on a case by case basis.

### Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
  - a) Photographic evidence.
  - b) Technical/manufacturer information.
  - c) Staff interviews.
  - d) Any other method deemed suitable by the assessor.